



CAMBRIDGE

# English Vocabulary **in** Elementary **Use**

60 units of  
vocabulary  
reference and  
practice

Self-study and  
classroom use

*with answers*

**SECOND  
EDITION**

**Michael McCarthy  
Felicity O'Dell**

# English Vocabulary **in** Use

Elementary

**SECOND  
EDITION**

*with answers  
and CD-ROM*

**Michael McCarthy  
Felicity O'Dell**

 **CAMBRIDGE**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

Cambridge, New York, Melbourne, Madrid, Cape Town, Singapore,  
São Paulo, Delhi, Dubai, Tokyo

Cambridge University Press

The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 8RU, UK

[www.cambridge.org](http://www.cambridge.org)

Information on this title: [www.cambridge.org/9780521136204](http://www.cambridge.org/9780521136204)

© Cambridge University Press 2010

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception  
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,  
no reproduction of any part may take place without the written  
permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2010

Produced by Kamae Design, Oxford

Printed in the United Kingdom at the University Press, Cambridge

*A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library*

ISBN 978-0-521-13620-4 Edition with answers and CD-ROM

ISBN 978-0-521-13617-4 Edition with answers

ISBN 978-0-521-13619-8 Edition without answers

ISBN 978-0-521-13621-1 Test Your English Vocabulary in Use Elementary

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or  
accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred  
to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such  
websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information  
regarding prices, travel timetables and other factual information given in this  
work are correct at the time of going to print but Cambridge University  
Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

# Contents

Thanks and acknowledgements 5

Introduction 6

## People

1 The family *mother, uncle, relatives* 8

2 Birth, marriage and death *birthday, married, die* 10

3 Parts of the body *head, foot, shoulder* 12

4 Clothes *hat, shirt, trousers* 14

5 Describing people *tall, dark, good-looking* 16

6 Health and illness *headache, heart attack, exercise* 18

7 Feelings *love, tired, thirsty* 20

8 Conversations 1: Greetings and wishes *Good morning, Happy New Year, well done* 22

9 Conversations 2: Useful words and expressions *I don't mind, anyway, let's* 24

## At home

10 Food and drink *rice, tea, vegetables* 26

11 In the kitchen *fridge, glass, saucepan* 28

12 In the bedroom and bathroom *wardrobe, shampoo, mirror* 30

13 In the living room *bookshelf, lamp, remote control* 32

## School and workplace

14 Jobs *secretary, factory, nurse* 34

15 At school and university *biology, notebook, pass an exam* 36

16 Communications *address, computer, memory stick* 38

## Leisure

17 Holidays *package holiday, phrasebook, visa* 40

18 Shops and shopping *chemist's, department store, credit card* 42

19 In a hotel *single room, key, luggage* 44

20 Eating out *café, menu, fish and chips* 46

21 Sports *table tennis, judo, volleyball* 48

22 Cinema *western, film star, DVD* 50

23 Free time at home *gardening, listening to CDs, programme* 52

24 Music and musical instruments *guitar, jazz, orchestra* 54

## The world

25 Countries and nationalities *Spain, Chinese, continent* 56

26 Weather *cold, rain, storm* 58

27 In the town *railway station, bank, town hall* 60

28 In the countryside *hill, farm, river* 62

29 Animals *horse, giraffe, pet* 64

30 Travelling *train, map, flight* 66

31 UK culture *fireworks, roast beef, Christmas* 68

## Social issues

32 Crime *murder, prison, guilty* 70

33 The media *TV channel, magazine, talk show* 72

34 Problems at home and work *repair, untidy, in a bad mood* 74

35 Global problems *hurricane, war, strike* 76

## Everyday verbs

- 36** Have / had / had *have breakfast, have time, have a swim* 78
- 37** Go / went / gone *go away, go shopping, go home* 80
- 38** Do / did / done *do an exercise, do your best, do the washing* 82
- 39** Make / made / made *make coffee, make a mistake, make a noise* 84
- 40** Come / came / come *come in, come from, come back* 86
- 41** Take / took / taken *take the bus, take a photo, take an exam* 88
- 42** Bring / brought / brought *bring something here, bring back, take* 90
- 43** Get / got / got *get tired, get better, get married* 92
- 44** Phrasal verbs *get up, put on, turn down* 94
- 45** Everyday things *watch TV, wash clothes, go for a walk* 96
- 46** Talking *say, tell, ask* 98
- 47** Moving *walk, drive, fly* 100

## Words and grammar

- 48** Talking about language *noun, verb, plural* 102
- 49** Conjunctions and connecting words *because, only, before* 104
- 50** Days, months, seasons *Monday, July, winter* 106
- 51** Time words *next year, often, once a week* 108
- 52** Places *middle, front, abroad* 110
- 53** Manner *fast, loud, the right way* 112
- 54** Common uncountable nouns *money, bread, information* 114
- 55** Common adjectives 1: Good and bad things *nice, awful, lovely* 116
- 56** Common adjectives 2: People *happy, horrible, intelligent* 118
- 57** Words and prepositions *wait for, belong to, good at* 120
- 58** Prefixes *impossible, ex-president, unsafe* 122
- 59** Suffixes *swimmer, useless, sunny* 124
- 60** Words you may confuse *quiet / quite, lend / borrow, cook / cooker* 126

Answer key	128
Phonemic symbols	158
Index	159
Irregular verbs	170
How to learn vocabulary	172
How to use the CD-ROM	173

# Thanks and acknowledgements

A book like this owes a great deal to many people.

Many thanks are due to the editorial team under Nóirín Burke at Cambridge University Press who steered this book through the preparation of this new edition. We are particularly grateful to Caroline Thiriau, Hazel Meek, Emily Hird and Alison Silver, who have provided us at different stages of the process with generous help and guidance. Thanks are also due to Jeanette Alfoldi and the production team, and Lucy Mordini for the proofreading.

Our domestic partners as always get a special thank you for their tolerance and support. It is a great sadness that Vlad will not be able to enjoy seeing the final copies of a book that he did more to help produce than he could ever have realised.

We would also like to thank the teachers and students who participated in focus groups at the following institutions:

UK

Bell School, Cambridge

Cambridge Academy of English, Cambridge

Regent, London

Oxford College International, London

Belgium

UCL, Louvain-la-Neuve

ULB, Brussels

British Council, Brussels

University of Namur

Russia

Sodruzhestvo School, Moscow

EF language school, Zhulebino, Moscow

Moscow State University

BKC – International House (IH), Moscow

Michael McCarthy

Felicity O'Dell

Cambridge, September 2009

Development of this publication has made use of the Cambridge International Corpus (CIC). The CIC is a computer database of contemporary spoken and written English, which currently stands at over one billion words. It includes British English, American English and other varieties of English. It also includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, developed in collaboration with the University of Cambridge ESOL Examinations. Cambridge University Press has built up the CIC to provide evidence about language use that helps to produce better language teaching materials.

Illustrations by: Amanda Macphail, Gary Wing, Gillian Martin, Humberto Blanco, Jo Taylor, Kathy Baxendale, Vicky Woodgate, Kate Charlesworth, Kathryn Baker, Mark Duffin

# Introduction

## To the student

This book will help you learn around 1,250 new words and phrases. You can use the book yourself, without a teacher. You can do the units in any order you like. The CD-ROM includes practice exercises, games and tests (see page 173).

Here is what the pages look like:

The left-hand page presents the new vocabulary.

The left-hand page is divided into sections.

Error warnings and learning tips are also given on the left-hand page.

The right-hand page practises the new vocabulary.

Pictures, tables and diagrams give variety to the exercises.

**40 Come / came / come**

Come and go are opposites.

**A Come in / out**  
We use 'come in' when someone knocks at the door of a room.  
Then the person who has just come into the room.  
Come out of it when the person comes out of the room.  
A visitor came out of the shop with some books. It was in the street.  
The post man came in and the ticket came out of the machine.

**B Come back and come home**  
Come back means return to the place you've just been.  
The car has broken down. They came back yesterday.  
She is here again.  
Come back to them and tell them.  
They came back half-starved.  
Come home is similar. 'Home' is 'here' for the person speaking.  
Where did you come from last night?  
Come - OK, about 1 o'clock.  
Come - Where? There was no taxi!

**C Other important uses of come**  
A. What country do you come from?  
B. Has your friend if you come from London? (I'm British).  
We're going (children's example). Do you want to come along? (come with us)  
Come and see our new room. (come see)

**SPOT WARNING**  
Don't use 'come' to talk about the weather or the seasons.

**Tip**  
Use 'come' to talk about people and things that are moving towards you.

Diagrams and pictures show the meaning.

Example sentences show the words in context.

Mini-dialogues show how people use the words in real situations.

**Exercises**

**40.1 Fill the gaps in the sentences.**

1. I got to school in time but the teacher didn't come till ... of the machine.  
2. A. The group on Thailand tomorrow.  
B. The ... back yesterday.  
C. ... from the ...  
3. The teacher ... the classroom and entered the house.  
4. A. Where do you come from?  
B. The Spanish ...  
5. I came ... me at 1 o'clock, so I can't talk about it then.  
6. The children ... school at 4 o'clock.

**40.2 What do you think these people are saying? Use words from the box.**

come from, come, come home, come back

1. Come from ...  
2. ...  
3. ...  
4. ...  
5. ...  
6. ...

**40.3 Fill the gaps using come in the correct form.**

1. Did you ... the last night? (come back)  
2. He ... back yesterday.  
3. He ... from the ...  
4. ... from a small town in Italy.  
5. Did you ... from a small town in Italy?

**40.4 Answer these questions for yourself.**

1. What time do you come to school?  
2. What country do you come from?  
3. What time do you come home every night?  
4. What time do you come to school every day?

**Follow-up**  
Write the form of a dictionary entry about the meaning and the example for each word. Use the words in the box and complete the table. Use a dictionary to help you if you are not sure.

Word	Meaning	Example
come		
came		
coming		
comes		

A lot of different exercise types are used: gap-fills, answering questions, matching, etc.

Follow-up tasks give you a chance to do more work on the topic of the unit.

The Answer key at the end of the book is for you to check your answers to the exercises after you do them. The Answer key sometimes has more than one answer. This is because there is often not just one correct way of saying something. The Answer key also has possible answers for most of the exercises which are open-ended, or where you are asked to talk about yourself.

The Index at the end of the book has all the important words and phrases from the left-hand pages. The Index also tells you how to pronounce words. There is a list of phonemic symbols to help you understand the pronunciation on page 158.

It is a good idea to have a dictionary with you when you use the book so you can check the meaning of something, or translate a word into your own language. Sometimes, you will also need a dictionary for the exercises; we tell you when this is so. You also need a vocabulary notebook to write down new words. See page 172 for ideas on how to learn and remember these new words.

We hope you like this book. When you have finished all the units in this book, you can test yourself using the book of tests that accompanies this book, *Test Your Vocabulary in Use Elementary Second Edition*. Then you can go to the next book in the series, *English Vocabulary in Use: Pre-intermediate and intermediate*, and after that, to the higher levels, *English Vocabulary in Use: Upper-intermediate and English Vocabulary in Use: Advanced*.

## To the teacher

This book can be used in class or as a self-study book. It is intended for learners at A1–A2 levels of the Council of Europe scale. It aims to take learners with a very basic level of vocabulary to a point where they can use approximately 2,000 words and phrases and teaches them around 1,250 new words and phrases. The vocabulary has been chosen for its usefulness in everyday situations, and we consulted a written and spoken corpus of present-day English to help us decide on the words and phrases to be included. The new vocabulary (on average 20–30 items per unit) is presented with illustrations and explanations on the left-hand page, and there are exercises and activities on the right-hand page. There is an Answer key and an Index with pronunciation for all the key vocabulary.

The book focuses not just on single words, but also on useful phrases and collocations. For example, difficult teaching points such as the difference between **do** and **make** are dealt with through collocation (we **do** our homework, but we **make** mistakes), and useful phrases (e.g. **come along**) are presented.

The book is organised around everyday topics, but also has units devoted to core verbs such as **get** and **bring / take**. Typical errors are indicated where appropriate, and the most typical meanings and uses are focused on for each key item. The units in the book can be used in any order you like, but it is often a good idea to do blocks of units based round the same topic (e.g. *People, At home, Leisure*).

The right-hand pages offer a variety of different types of activities, including traditional ones such as gap-filling, but also more open-ended ones and personalised activities which enable learners to talk about their own lives. Although the activities and exercises are designed for self-study, they can easily be adapted for pairwork, groupwork or whole-class activities in the usual ways. For example, where there are dialogues, students can take the speaking parts and practise the conversations, and where the exercises have questions and answers, students can practise asking each other the questions and answering them. See who has the best ideas for recording vocabulary in their notebook. The Answer key sometimes gives alternative answers to the exercises, and also gives possible model answers for the more personalised ones.

When the learners have worked through a group of units, it is a good idea to repeat some of the work (for example, the exercises) and to expand on the meaning and use of key words and phrases by extra discussion in class, and find other examples of the key items in other texts and situations. This can be done at intervals of one to three months after first working on a unit. This is important, since it is usually the case that learners need five to seven exposures to a word or phrase before they can really know it, and no single book can do enough to ensure that words are always learnt first time.

When your students have finished all the units in this book, they can test themselves using the book of tests that accompanies this book, *Test Your Vocabulary in Use Elementary Second Edition*. They will then be ready to move on to the next book in this series: *English Vocabulary in Use: Pre-intermediate and intermediate*, by Stuart Redman.

Find more resources for teachers at [www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse](http://www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse)

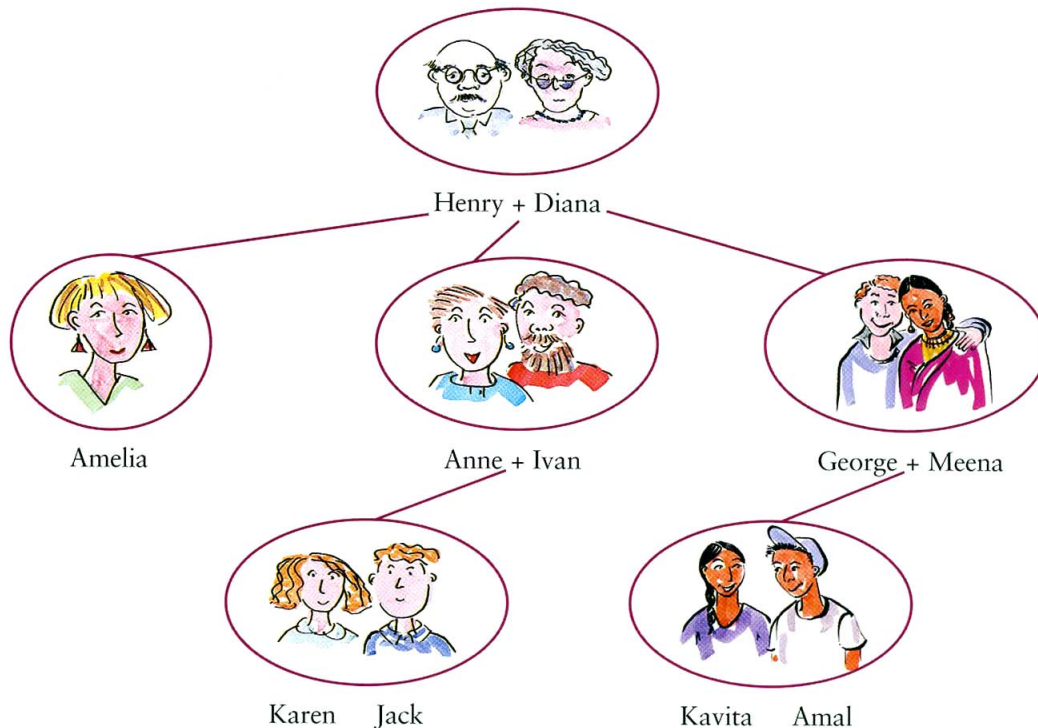
We hope you enjoy using the book.



# 1 The family

## A Family words

A family tree for some of Anne and Ivan Sorokin's relatives or relations.



### Ivan and Anne and their children

Ivan is Anne's **husband** and Karen and Jack's **father**.  
Anne is Ivan's **wife** and Karen and Jack's **mother**.  
Anne and Ivan are Karen and Jack's **parents**.  
Karen is Anne and Ivan's **daughter**. Jack is their **son**.  
Karen is Jack's **sister**. Jack is Karen's **brother**.

### Henry and Diana

Henry is Karen and Jack's **grandfather**. Diana is their **grandmother**.  
Henry and Diana are Karen and Jack's **grandparents**.  
Karen is their **granddaughter**. Jack is their **grandson**.

### Amelia, George and Meena

George is Karen and Jack's **uncle**.  
Amelia and Meena are Karen and Jack's **aunts**.  
Karen is Amelia, George and Meena's **niece**. Jack is their **nephew**.  
Kavita and Amal are Karen and Jack's **cousins**.

## B Expressions

Have you got any brothers and sisters?

No, I am an **only child**.

Do you come from a big family?

Yes, I have three brothers and two sisters.

### Error warning

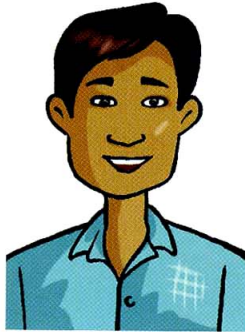
We say 'my/his wife' (singular) but 'our/their wives' (plural).

# Exercises

**1.1** Look at the family tree on the opposite page. Complete the sentences.

- 1 Kavita is Amal's sister.....
- 2 Amal is Kavita's .....
- 3 Anne is Kavita's .....
- 4 Ivan is Amal's .....
- 5 Diana is Amal's .....
- 6 Henry is Kavita's .....
- 7 Amal is Ivan's .....
- 8 Kavita is Ivan's .....
- 9 Meena is Kavita's .....
- 10 Meena is George's .....
- 11 Karen is Amal's .....

**1.2** The Sorokins have some other relatives. Complete the sentences about them.



Sanjay



Alexander and Leila

Meena has a brother, Sanjay. Sanjay is Kavita and Amal's <sup>1</sup>uncle..... and Sanjay's wife is their <sup>2</sup>..... . Sanjay and his wife have one son, Prem. Prem is an <sup>3</sup>..... .

Henry's parents are still alive. Alexander is Henry's <sup>4</sup>..... and his <sup>5</sup>..... Leila is Henry's <sup>6</sup>..... . Alexander and Leila have three <sup>7</sup>..... – Amelia, Ivan and George. Ivan and George and their <sup>8</sup>..... , Anne and Meena, love their <sup>9</sup>..... and visit them as often as possible.

**1.3** Ask a friend these questions. Then write sentences about your friend and their family. For example, Chen has one brother but no sisters.

- 1 Have you got any brothers and sisters?
- 2 Have you got any cousins?
- 3 Have you got any nieces or nephews?
- 4 Have you got any grandparents?
- 5 Do you come from a big family?

**1.4** Cover the opposite page. How many family words can you write down in two minutes? Check what you wrote carefully with the book. Did you spell everything correctly? Which words did you forget?

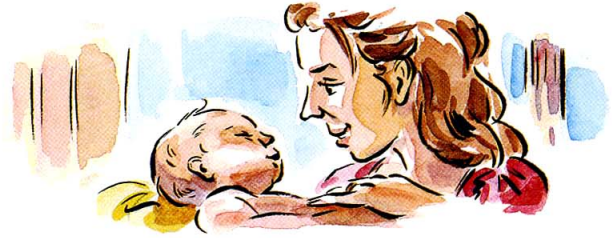
## Follow-up

Draw your family tree. Then write sentences. Write about your relations. *Anne is my mother.* Use a dictionary to help you.

## 2 Birth, marriage and death

### A Birth

Anna had a baby yesterday.  
He was born at 1.15 yesterday morning.  
He weighed 3 kilograms.



They are going to call him John – after John, his grandfather. His grandfather's birthday is June 16th too – but he was born in 1945!

The baby's parents were born in 1974.

#### Error warning

We say: Anna had a baby [NOT Anna got a baby]. We say: He/She was born [NOT He/She born or He/She is-born].

### B Marriage

If you do not have a partner, you are **single**.

If you have a husband or wife, you are **married**.

If your husband or wife dies, you are **widowed**.

If your marriage breaks up, you are **separated / divorced**. (the marriage has legally ended)

Bill and Sarah got married.

The wedding



#### Error warning

Sarah got married to Bill [NOT with Bill].

They (got) married in 1988. (*married* without *got* is more formal)

They went on their honeymoon to Italy.

They were married for 20 years.

### C Death

Then Bill became ill.

He died last year.

He died of a heart attack.

#### Error warning

Bill is dead [NOT Bill is-died or Bill is-death].



The funeral

# Exercises

## 2.1 Think of people you know. Where were they born? When?

- 1 My mother was born in Scotland on July 4th 1957.
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....

## 2.2 Find a word on the opposite page which means ...

- 1 the name for a woman on her wedding day. *bride*
- 2 the name for a man on his wedding day.
- 3 what you are if you haven't got a partner.
- 4 to be 57 kilograms.
- 5 what you are if your marriage has legally ended.
- 6 a religious service for a dead person.
- 7 a holiday after a wedding.
- 8 what you are if your husband or wife dies.

## 2.3 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

in after of to born on

<sup>1</sup> In ..... 2003 Anne got married <sup>2</sup> ..... Robert Smith. Unfortunately, Robert's grandmother, Rosemary Smith, died <sup>3</sup> ..... old age soon after their wedding. Robert and Anne were <sup>4</sup> ..... their honeymoon when she died. Anne's baby daughter was <sup>5</sup> ..... two years later. They called the baby Rosemary, <sup>6</sup> ..... Robert's grandmother.

## 2.4 When were these people born and when did they die? Write sentences.

- 1 Genghis Khan (1162–1227) Genghis Khan was born in 1162 and died in 1227.
- 2 Christopher Columbus (1451–1506)
- 3 Leonardo da Vinci (1452–1519)
- 4 Princess Diana (1961–1997)
- 5 Heath Ledger (1979–2008)



## 2.5 Complete the sentences using *died*, *dead* or *death*.

- 1 Jill's grandfather *died* ..... last year.
- 2 His ..... made her very sad.
- 3 Her grandmother has been ..... for five years now.
- 4 She ..... of a heart attack.
- 5 Now all Jill's grandparents are .....

## 2.6 Write about your family. Use words and expressions from the opposite page.

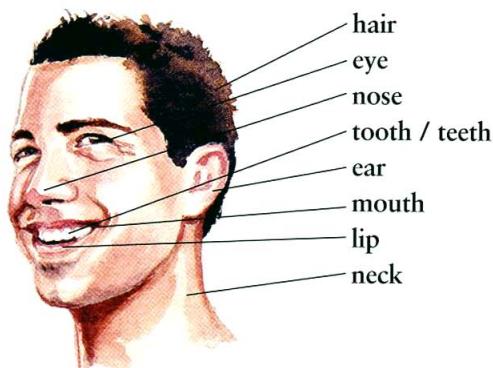
Here are some ideas for making your sentences.

I have ..... I/my .....  
got married in ..... (year).  
For my/his/her honeymoon, I/he/she went  
to .....

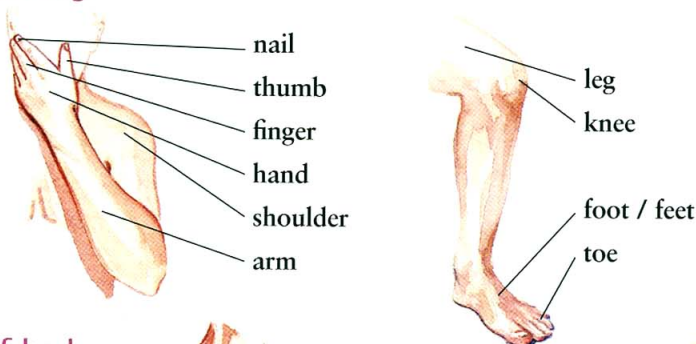
I have / my ..... has .....  
children. They were born in .....  
and ..... (years).

# 3 Parts of the body

## A Head and face

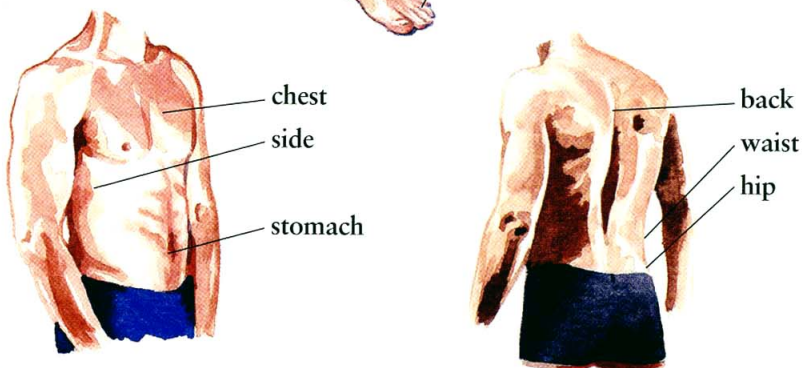


## B Arm and leg

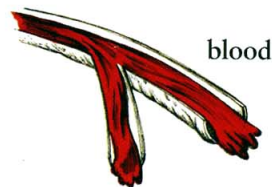
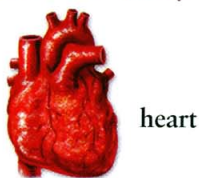


## C Rest of body

We have skin covering our bodies.



## D Inside the body



## E Pronunciation problems

eye /aɪ/ knee /ni:/ stomach /'stʌmək/ heart /hɑ:t/ blood /blʌd/ foot /fʊt/ tooth /tu:θ/

## F Singular and plurals

one foot – two feet      one tooth – two teeth

Hair is a singular word. My hair is very long – I must cut it soon.

### Error warning

Usually we use my, your, his, her, etc. with parts of the body. Jane is washing her hair [NOT Jane is washing the hair]. I have a pain in my leg [NOT I have a pain in the leg].

(See Unit 6: Health and illness.)

# Exercises

**3.1** Here are the names of some parts of the body with the letters mixed up. What are they?

- |            |                   |          |       |
|------------|-------------------|----------|-------|
| 1 eken     | <u>knee</u> ..... | 6 are    | ..... |
| 2 osen     | .....             | 7 hotot  | ..... |
| 3 rathe    | .....             | 8 buhtm  | ..... |
| 4 hamcost  | .....             | 9 akbc   | ..... |
| 5 olderush | .....             | 10 tiwas | ..... |

**3.2** Complete these sentences with words from the opposite page.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 A hand has five <u>fingers</u> ..... | 6 You hear with your .....              |
| 2 A foot has five .....                | 7 The child sat on her father's .....   |
| 3 An adult has 32 .....                | 8 Your ..... type can be A, B, AB or O. |
| 4 You smell with your .....            | 9 You think with your .....             |
| 5 The ..... is a symbol of love.       |   |

**3.3** Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- I have a pain in ~~the~~ side. I have a pain in my *side*.
- That woman has got very big *foots*.
- My grandfather has a pain in the *shoulder*.
- The baby has already got two *tooths*.
- The little girl needs to wash the face and the hands before dinner.
- My *hairs* are dirty. I need to wash them.

**3.4** Parts of the body are often used in compound nouns too. Complete these nouns with a word from the opposite page.



1 .....arm.....chair



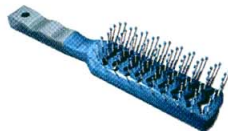
3 .....stick



5 .....scarf



2 .....ball




4 .....brush




6 .....bag

## Follow-up


Parts of the body words are used in other ways too.

- 1  A chair has arms, legs and a back. Where do you think they are?  
a *its* back

- 4  This is a bottle. Where is its neck?

- 2  This is a needle. Where is its eye?

- 5  This is a mountain. Where is its foot?

- 3  This is a clock. Where is its face? Where are its hands?

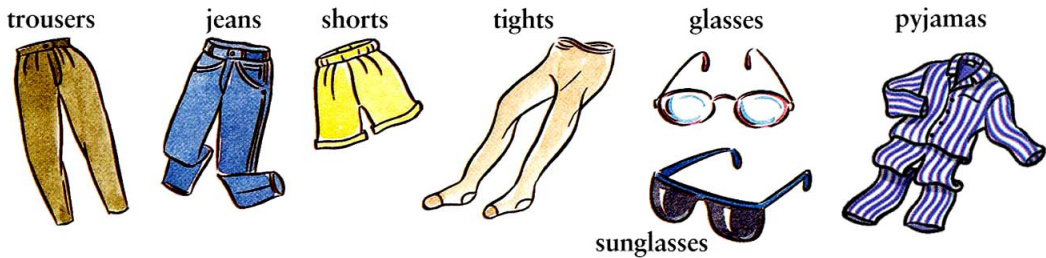
# 4 Clothes

## A Clothes



## B Plural words

These words are always plural in English. They need a plural verb.



My suit is new but these trousers are old. Her jeans / shorts / tights are blue.

*Note:* You say: a pair of trousers / shorts / glasses, etc.

## C Verbs

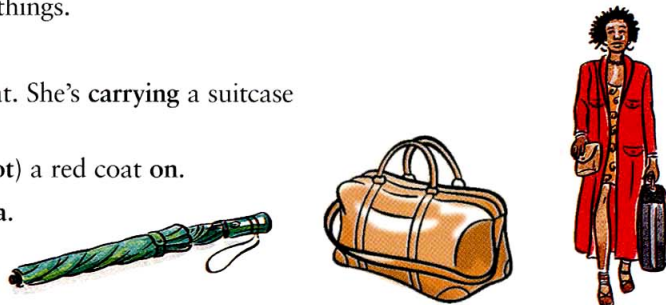
You wear clothes but you carry things.

You wear glasses.

Naomi is wearing a long red coat. She's carrying a suitcase and a small handbag.

You can also say: Naomi has (got) a red coat on.

You carry a bag and an umbrella.



In the morning you get dressed or put your clothes on. At night you get undressed or you take your clothes off.

### Error warning

You put clothes on but you take clothes off [NOT ~~put clothes off~~].

### Tip

When you get dressed in the morning, say to yourself *Now I'm putting on my socks. Now I'm putting on my shoes* and so on.

# Exercises

## 4.1 Complete the sentences.

- Joe has a job interview today, so he's wearing a smart suit..... , a white shirt..... and a tie.....
- Julia's not working today, so she's wearing a T-shirt..... and shorts.....
- Liz is going to play tennis. She's wearing white shorts..... and trainers.....
- Gianni is going to a business meeting. He's .....ing a briefcase..... with his papers and laptop.
- My trousers are too big. I have to wear a belt.....
- It's cold today. I'll wear my jacket..... , and I'll take my coat..... too.

## 4.2 Match the item of clothing with the part of the body.

scarf	belt	shoe	hat	glove	glasses	tights	ring
-------	------	------	-----	-------	---------	--------	------

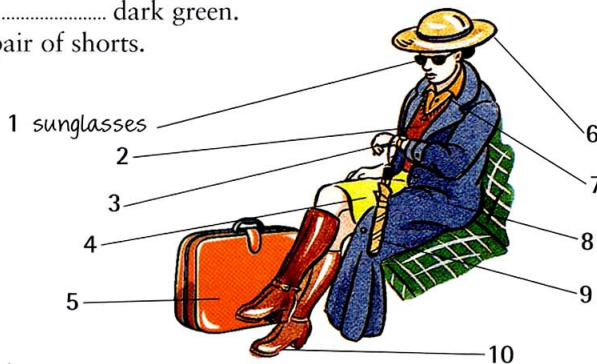
  

## 4.3 Complete the sentences with one of the verbs in the box and put it in the right form.

be	wear	carry	have
----	------	-------	------

- Nick's jeans are..... blue and his T-shirt ..... red.
- Julia ..... jeans and a T-shirt today.
- Meena ..... got a red coat on and she ..... some flowers.
- Sarah's dress ..... old but her shoes ..... new.
- Last year Jim's trousers ..... white. Now they ..... grey.
- ..... this a new pair of jeans?
- My favourite pyjamas ..... dark green.
- Kim ..... a new pair of shorts.

## 4.4 Label the picture.



## 4.5 Complete the verbs in the table.

morning	night
get <u>dressed</u> .....	get .....
or put .....	or ..... your clothes off

## 4.6 What are you wearing today? Use a dictionary to help you.

I'm wearing a white T-shirt and a blue jumper. I've got a pair of black trousers on. I'm wearing blue socks and white trainers. I've also got a watch and a pair of glasses on.



# 5 Describing people

## A Height /haɪt/ and weight /weɪt/

Bettina Schwenke is a very **tall** woman.

Tom Jakes is quite **short**.

If you aren't tall or short, you are of **medium height**.

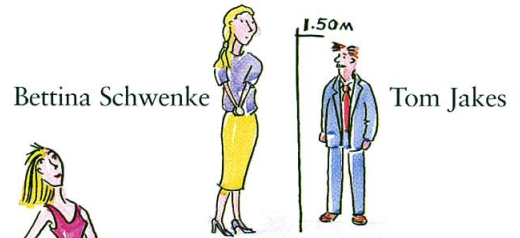
Agata Sanchez is really **slim**.

I was very **thin** when I was in hospital.

[slim is more polite than thin]

The doctor said I am **overweight**. [weigh too much]

An **overweight** man holding a **fat** cat opened the door.



Agata Sanchez



## B Face and head

Suri has **dark skin** and **dark hair**. She has **brown** eyes.

Polly has **blonde** (or **fair**) **hair** and **fair skin**. She has **blue** eyes.

Beat has a **beard** and **long hair**. He has **green** eyes.

Luca has a **moustache** /mu'stɑːʃ/ and **short hair**.

You can also use **has got**, for example, Suri **has got dark hair** and **dark skin**.



### Error warning

People are tall [NOT People are high].

People have blonde or dark hair [NOT hairs].

My mother is a very **beautiful** woman. [very pretty]

My dad's a very **good-looking** man.

My sister is **pretty**. (usually girls / women only)

Bob's an **ugly** man. [ugly = the opposite of beautiful or good-looking]

I'm not ugly or beautiful, I'm just **average-looking**!

## C Age

My grandmother is 97. She's very **old**. My sister is 14. She's **young**, but would like to be **older**. My father is 56. He's **middle-aged**, but would like to be **younger**!

This hospital is for **elderly** people. (more polite than old)

## D Expressions

A: **How tall** is Bettina / Tom? B: She's 1.85 metres tall. / He's 1.48 metres tall.

A: **How heavy** are you? / **How much** do you weigh? B: I weigh 62 kilos / 74 kilos, etc.

A: **How old** is he? B: He's 84.

A: **What** does Gemma / your sister **look like**?

B: She's tall and dark. She's very pretty.

### Tip

Some of the words on this page are a little negative, so be careful how you use them. It's better not to say to someone: 'You are fat / thin / ugly / old.'

# Exercises

## 5.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 He's only 1 metre 52. He's quite short.
- 2 Very ..... people are often good at basketball.
- 3 Models are usually .....
- 4 Does she have dark skin? No, it's .....
- 5 She's only seven. She's very .....
- 6 If I eat too much I'll be .....
- 7 My grandmother is in this hospital. It's a hospital for ..... people. (don't use 'old')

## 5.2 Complete the questions using the words in brackets ( ).

- 1 How tall is your brother? (your brother)  
He's about 1 metre 75.
- 2 Is ..... ? (Elena's hair)  
No, she's got dark hair.
- 3 Is ..... ? (Mike's hair)  
Yes, it is quite long.
- 4 Are ..... ? (your parents)  
Not really, they're middle-aged.
- 5 Is ..... ? (his sister)  
Yes, she's very pretty.
- 6 Why ..... ? (Sara, so thin)  
She's very ill.

## 5.3 Write sentences about the people in these pictures.



Suzanna



Jeff



Caroline



Stefan

- 1 Suzanna's got long blonde hair and fair skin.
- 2 Jeff has .....
- 3 Caroline's got .....
- 4 Stefan's hair is ..... and he .....

## 5.4 Write questions.

- 1 your brother, height How tall is your brother?
- 2 your teacher, looks .....
- 3 you, weight .....
- 4 your mother, age .....
- 5 your sister, height .....
- 6 your parents, looks .....

## 5.5 Now write answers to the questions in 5.4.

- 1 He's not very tall. He's 1 metre 52.

### Follow-up

Write down the names of three people you know. Then write about their:

- height (tall, short, medium height)
- eyes (colour)
- hair (colour, long, short, beard)
- looks (ordinary, good-looking, ugly, etc.)

# 6 Health and illness

## A How are you today?

I'm very well, thanks.

I'm **fine**, thanks.

I **don't** feel very well. I must go home and rest. (I'll probably be OK tomorrow.)

I **feel ill**. Can you get a **doctor**, please? (Perhaps it's a serious problem.)

That fish was bad. I think I'm going to be **sick!** (I want to vomit.)

## B Everyday problems

Have you got an **aspirin**? I've got a **headache**. /'hedeɪk/



I've got **toothache**. /'tu:θ eɪk/ I need to go to the **dentist**.



I'm going to bed with a hot drink. I've got a **cold**.



## C Problems people have for many years / all their lives

I get **hay fever** every summer, from flowers and grass. I **sneeze** all day. /sni:z/

My little brother has **asthma**; sometimes he can't breathe. /'æsmə/



## D Illnesses in hot / tropical countries



mosquito

In some countries, mosquitoes can give people **malaria**. /mə'leəriə/

The drinking water was bad, and many children had **cholera**. /'kɒlərə/

## E Serious illnesses

Every year **cancer** kills many people who smoke. /'kænsə/

### Error warning

My father had a **heart attack**  
[NOT ɡət a heart attack].



## F Expressions

A: Do you **have a healthy diet**?

B: Yes, I eat lots of fruit and vegetables.

A: Do you **exercise**?

B: Yes, I like swimming, jogging and cycling. They're really **good for you**.

A: I **feel stressed!**

B: Do you? You need to **relax** more and don't panic about work!

# Exercises

## 6.1 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: How are you today?  
B: *Very well, thanks.*
- A: Good!
- 2 A: Are you OK?  
B: No, .....
- A: Would you like to use the bathroom?  
B: Yes, thank you.
- 3 A: I .....
- B: I'll get a doctor.  
A: Oh, thank you.
- 4 A: .....
- B: Here's the dentist's phone number.  
A: Thanks.
- 5 A: Your nose is red. Have you got .....
- B: Yes.  
A: Have a hot drink and go to bed early.

## 6.2 Match the illnesses in the table with a possible treatment.

go to the dentist    ~~take an aspirin~~    go to hospital    go to bed with a hot drink

illness	treatment
a headache	take an aspirin
toothache	
a heart attack	
a cold	

## 6.3 What illnesses are connected with ...

- 1 a mosquito bite? *malaria*
- 2 bad drinking water?
- 3 pollution, traffic fumes, etc.?
- 4 grass, flowers, etc.?
- 5 smoking, sunshine, etc.?

## 6.4 Answer these questions. Use a dictionary to help you.

- 1 Do you have a healthy diet?
- 2 What exercise do you do?
- 3 Do you often feel stressed?
- 4 Have you ever been in hospital?

# 7 Feelings

## A Love, like and hate



++  
love

+  
like

-  
don't like

--  
hate

I love my family and my best friend.

I like my job.

I don't like horror films.

I hate spiders.



## B Happy, sad and tired



happy



sad



angry



upset



cold



hot



thirsty



hungry



well



ill



tired



surprised

### Error warning

I am very happy about your news [NOT I am very happy for your news]. BUT You did very well in your exam - I'm very happy for you.

## C Prefer, hope and want

I prefer coffee to tea. (= I like coffee more than I like tea.)

I hope to do well in my exam.

I hope (that) my friend does well in his exam.

I want a new car. [I would like]

I want to buy a new car.

Note: I want my father to buy a new car.

### Error warning

I want you to help me [NOT I want that you help me].

## D Expressions

A: Do you like football?

B: Yes, I really like football / it. /

No, I don't like football / it very much.

A: How's your grandfather?

B: He's very well, thanks.

A: And how about your grandmother?

B: She's a bit / a little tired.

### Error warning

[NOT I very like football / it. or I like very much football / it.]

# Exercises

## 7.1 Do you love, like, not like or hate these things? Write sentences.

- |                |                   |              |
|----------------|-------------------|--------------|
| 1 chocolate    | I love chocolate. | 5 football   |
| 2 cowboy films |                   | 6 cats       |
| 3 flying       |                   | 7 cars       |
| 4 tea          |                   | 8 jazz music |





## 7.2 Which do you prefer? Write answers.

- |                              |                         |                                      |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 tea or coffee?             | I prefer coffee to tea. | 4 cars or bikes?                     |
| 2 dogs or cats?              |                         | 5 strawberry or chocolate ice cream? |
| 3 sunbathing or sightseeing? |                         | 6 watching sport or doing sport?     |

## 7.3 Answer these questions using *want* or *hope*.

- You're thirsty. What do you want? I want a cup of tea.
- The lesson feels very long. What do you hope?
- You're hungry. What do you want?
- Your friend feels ill. What do you hope?
- You're tired. What do you want to do?
- You're upset. What do you want to do?
- It's very cold weather. What do you hope?
- Your friend feels sad. What do you want?

## 7.4 Look at the pictures. How do the people feel? Use words from B opposite.

- |   |                                |   |                    |
|---|--------------------------------|---|--------------------|
| 1   | Jessica <i>is hungry</i> ..... | 4   | Sunita .....       |
| 2  | Fred .....                     | 5  | Fiona .....        |
| 3  | William .....                  | 6  | The children ..... |

## 7.5 Correct the mistakes.

- I very like basketball. I like basketball very much.
- I am happy for my sister's good news.
- The teacher wants that we learn these new words.
- I like really spiders.
- My brother has a good new job. I'm very happy about him.
- My parents want that I go to university.
- I feel very well. How for you?
- Priya is bit tired this morning.

### Follow-up

When did you last feel ...

1 angry? 2 surprised? 3 upset? 4 hungry?

I felt angry this morning when I read the newspaper.

# 8 Conversations 1: Greetings and wishes

## A Every day



good morning



good afternoon



good evening



### Error warning

When it's someone's birthday we say **Happy Birthday** [NOT Congratulations].

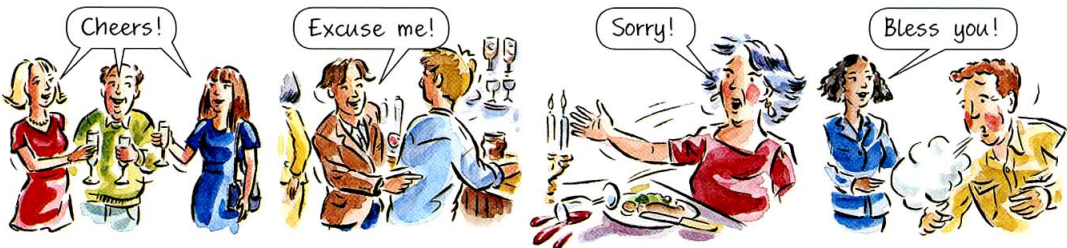
When we leave someone we usually say **Goodbye** and also perhaps **See you soon!** See you soon is quite informal.

When someone goes to bed, we usually say **Goodnight**. We sometimes also say **Sleep well**.

Don't say **Goodnight** when you arrive somewhere, only when you leave.

If you ask for something you usually say **Please**.

If someone does something nice for you, you say **Thank you**.



## B Special days

When:	you say:
it's someone's birthday	Happy Birthday!
it's Christmas	Happy / Merry Christmas! /'krɪsməs/
it's New Year's Day	Happy New Year!
someone is doing something difficult, e.g. taking an exam or having an interview for a job	Good luck!
someone has done something special, e.g. done well in an exam or had a baby	Congratulations! / Well done!

# Exercises

## 8.1 Choose one of the phrases from the opposite page to fit the dialogues.

- |  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1 A: ( <i>sneezes</i> ) Atishoo!       | 5 A: It's my birthday today. |
| B: <u>Bless you!</u>                   | B: .....                     |
| 2 A: I'm taking my driving test today. | 6 A: How are you?            |
| B: .....                               | B: .....                     |
| 3 A: I passed my driving test!         | 7 A: Hello!                  |
| B: .....                               | B: .....                     |
| 4 A: Goodbye.                          | 8 A: Here's your tea.        |
| B: .....                               | B: .....                     |

## 8.2 What is the person saying in the pictures?



## 8.3 What do you say? Choose a phrase from the opposite page.

- 1 You want to go through a doorway. There are some people blocking it. *Excuse me!*
- 2 A friend buys you a drink.
- 3 A child says 'Goodnight' to you.
- 4 You answer the phone at work. It is 10.30 am.
- 5 You answer the phone at work. It is 3 pm.
- 6 It is 2 am on January 1st. You meet a friend in the street.
- 7 You are on a very crowded bus and you stand on someone's foot.
- 8 It is 24th December. You meet a friend on the bus.

## 8.4 You meet Ann, an English friend. Reply to her.

- ANN: Good evening.  
 YOU: Hello.....  
 ANN: How are you?  
 YOU: .....
- ANN: It's my birthday today.  
 YOU: .....
- ANN: Would you like a drink?  
 YOU: .....
- ANN: Here you are. Cheers!  
 YOU: .....

## 8.5 Write a conversation using as many phrases as possible from the opposite page.



# 9 Conversations 2: Useful words and expressions

## A Words

word	example	meaning
actually	People say bad things about her, but she's <b>actually</b> very nice.	in reality
really	The book is <b>really</b> good.	very
else	Do you want to buy anything <b>else</b> ? Or go somewhere <b>else</b> ?	in addition or different
around	I'll meet you at <b>around</b> 6 o'clock.	about or approximately
anyway	I'll drive you home. I'm going that way <b>anyway</b> . <sup>1</sup> <b>Anyway</b> , as I said, I woke up very late today. <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> to give a reason for doing something <sup>2</sup> to return to an earlier subject

### Error warning

Actually is a false friend in some languages – in English it means 'in reality' NOT 'now'.

## B Expressions

- A: **Why don't** we go to the cinema this evening? (used to make a suggestion)  
 B: Good idea. **Let's** go and see a film and then have a meal. (used to make a suggestion)  
 A: OK! Which film do you want to see?  
 B: **I don't mind**. [It's all the same to me.] **It's up to you**. [You can decide.]  
 A: **How about** / **What about** the new Angelina Jolie film? (used to make a suggestion)  
 B: Great!

### Error warning

Why don't we go ... [~~NOT Why don't we going~~] or Let's go ... [~~NOT Let's going~~].  
 How about going ... [~~NOT How about go~~] or What about going ... [~~NOT What about go~~].

- A: I was late for work today.  
 B: **Oh dear!** Was your boss angry? (used when you are surprised or disappointed)  
 A: I forgot to bring your book!  
 B: Oh, **it doesn't matter**. I don't need it. [it's not important]  
 A: I'm sorry, but I can't come to your party.  
 B: **What a pity!** (used when you are disappointed)  
 A: I passed my exam.  
 B: **Well done!**  
 A: **Hurry up!** The taxi's here. [be quick]  
 A: **Look out!** / **Be careful!** – there's a car coming.  
 A: We need to buy Marta's birthday present.  
 B: **Absolutely!** What about getting her a CD? (used when you agree strongly)  
 A: **I agree**. Let's go shopping this afternoon.

### Error warning

I agree or I don't agree [~~NOT I am agree or I'm not agree~~].

# Exercises

## 9.1 Choose a word from A opposite to complete the sentences.

- 1 It's boring here. Let's go somewhere *else*.....
- 2 There were ..... 20 people at the lecture.
- 3 It's a ..... lovely photo!
- 4 Have you had enough to eat? Would you like anything ..... ?
- 5 He said he was a doctor but he's ..... still a medical student.
- 6 The journey takes ..... two hours.

## 9.2 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 I don't like skiing and *about / anyway / else* I'm not free that weekend.
- 2 I don't *mind / matter / agree* what we do. It's all the same to me.
- 3 *It's up to you / Let's / I agree* invite Rachel to dinner tonight.
- 4 *Be careful / What a pity / Oh dear* in London. There's lots of traffic there.
- 5 I don't have time to go to the cinema and *really / absolutely / anyway* I've seen that film already.

## 9.3 Choose an expression from the box to fit these situations.

Well done!	Oh dear!	What a pity!
Hurry up!	It's up to you.	Look out!



## 9.4 Correct the eight mistakes in the dialogue.

VERA: We need to celebrate. I got a new job!  
 LUKE: Well ~~made!~~ *done*  
 How about go out for a meal this evening?  
 VERA: Great! Let go to that Italian restaurant. Or do you prefer the Chinese one?  
 LUKE: I don't mind it. I like the Italian one but it's very expensive.  
 VERA: Oh, it isn't matter.  
 LUKE: OK. Why don't we going to the Italian restaurant and then we could go to the cinema afterwards? Your new job needs a special celebration.  
 VERA: I'm agree. And I'd love to see that film with George Clooney. Would you?  
 LUKE: Absolute!

# 10 Food and drink

## A Everyday food

Would you like some **bread**?  
 I love **sushi** because I love **rice**.  
**Pasta** is good for you, but don't eat too much!  
 I always put **salt** on my **chips**, but not **pepper**.  
 My sister never eats **meat** or **fish**. She's **vegetarian**.  
 Do you take **sugar** in tea or coffee?

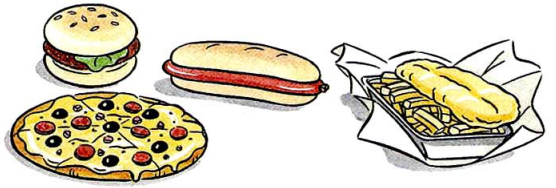


### Error warning

Can I have some bread? [NOT Can I have a bread?]

## B Fast food

I eat **hamburgers**, **hot dogs** and **pizzas** when I don't have much time.  
**Fish and chips** is popular in Britain, Australia and New Zealand.



## C Fruit /fru:t/ and vegetables /'vedʒtəbəlz/

Vegetables are good for you. **Fruit** is also good for you. (singular, uncountable)

Vegetables



carrots    beans    potatoes    tomatoes    peas    onions /'ʌjənz/    garlic    mushrooms

Fruit

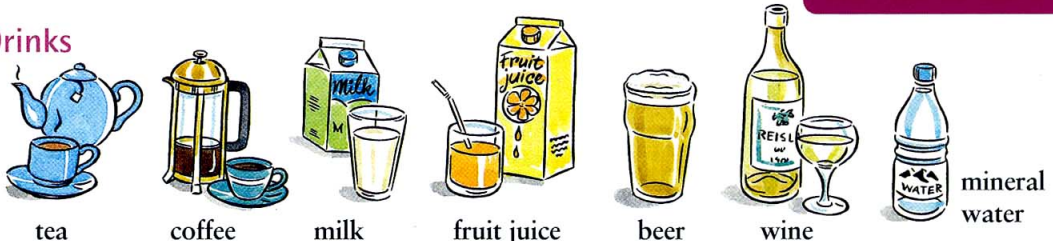


orange /'brɪndʒ/    apple    banana    pear /peə/    grapes    strawberries /'strɔ:brɪz/    pineapple /'paɪnæpl/

### Error warning

I love fruit [NOT I love fruits].

## D Drinks



tea    coffee    milk    fruit juice    beer    wine    mineral water

### Tip

Go to a supermarket. How many different kinds of food or drink have English names on them? Try to learn some of them.

# Exercises

**10.1** Complete the sentences. Use words from the opposite page.

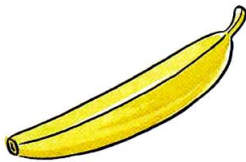
- 1 Rice ..... is popular in Japan.
- 2 ..... and ..... are very popular in Italy.
- 3 Chips are made from .....
- 4 Many British people eat .....
- 5 Hamburgers are made from .....
- 6 A ..... is a sausage inside a piece of bread.

**10.2** Put these words into two lists: fruit and vegetables.

~~beans~~ pineapple grapes onions apple carrot garlic pear mushrooms

fruit	vegetables
	beans

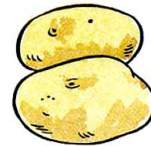
**10.3** Write the names of these fruit and vegetables.



1 banana .....



3 .....



5 .....



2 .....



4 .....



6 .....

**10.4** Here are the names of some drinks with the letters mixed up. What are they?

- |                        |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 eta <u>tea</u> ..... | 4 fecofe .....        |
| 2 rebe .....           | 5 rituf eciju .....   |
| 3 klim .....           | 6 nilemar retaw ..... |

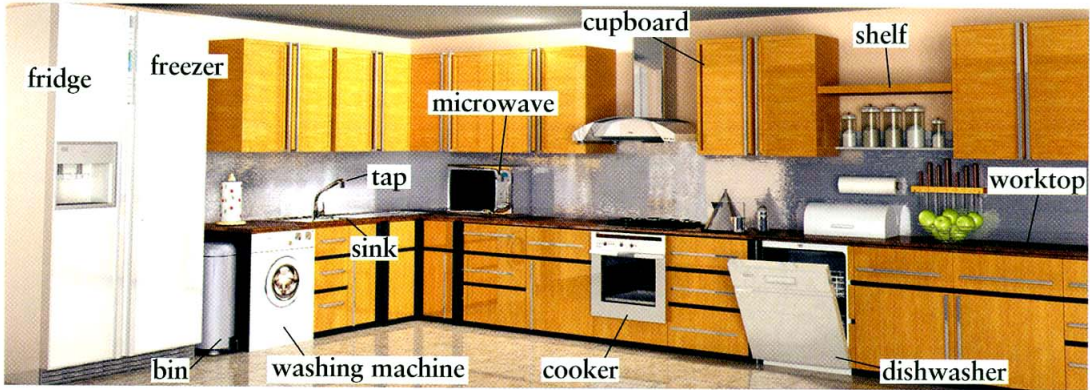
**10.5** Choose a, b or c.

- 1 Vegetarians do not eat a) vegetables b) meat c) fast food.
- 2 Garlic is a kind of a) fruit b) fast food c) vegetable.
- 3 You put a) salt b) beer c) sugar in coffee.
- 4 Which is correct a) pinapple b) pineapple c) pieapple?
- 5 The first sound in onion is the same as the sound in a) fun b) orange c) man.
- 6 A pear is a) a drink b) a vegetable c) a fruit.

**10.6** What are your four favourite foods? And your three favourite drinks? Are they good for you? Use a dictionary to help you.

# 11 In the kitchen

## A What's in the kitchen?



## B Things we use in the kitchen



## C Things we use for eating and drinking



## D Expressions

A: Where can I find a mug / a cloth / some kitchen paper? B: They are in the cupboard.

A: Can I help with the washing-up / cooking? B: Yes, please! You can dry the plates. / You can cook some rice.

A: Where does this cup / plate / frying pan go? B: Put it in this cupboard, please.

### Tip

Stick labels on objects in your kitchen with their English names on them. You will see these every day and this will help you to learn the words.



# Exercises

11.1 Tick (✓) yes or no. Write sentences for the wrong answers.

- |  | yes | no |
|--|-----|----|
| 1 I use a frying pan to drink out of.        |     | ✓  |
| 2 You use washing-up liquid to clean plates. |     |    |
| 3 The fridge is cold inside.                 |     |    |
| 4 The fridge is colder than the freezer.     |     |    |
| 5 I turn on the tap to get water.            |     |    |
| 6 A tea towel is for making tea.             |     |    |

11.2 Make questions for these answers. Use words from the opposite page.

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1 Where's the coffee? ..... | It's in the cupboard.                                |
| 2 .....                     | It's on the cooker.                                  |
| 3 .....                     | Please put them on the worktop.                      |
| 4 .....                     | Thanks. You can wash these plates and I'll dry them. |
| 5 .....                     | In the fridge on the bottom shelf.                   |

11.3 What do you need?

- 1 To make coffee I need a coffee maker, a cup, a spoon .....
- 2 To make tea I need .....
- 3 To fry something I need .....
- 4 To eat my food I need .....
- 5 To drink some water I need .....
- 6 To cook dinner in two minutes I need .....
- 7 To wash plates, knives and forks I need .....
- 8 To wash my clothes I need .....

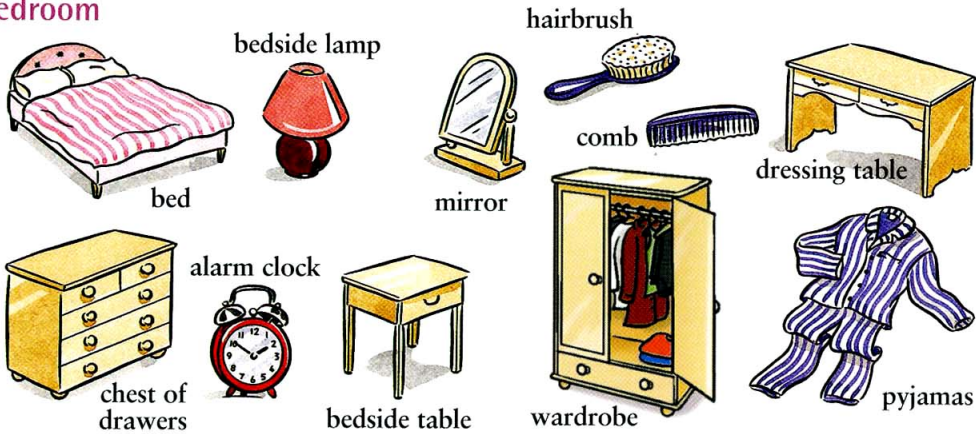
11.4 Look at the picture. Answer the questions.



- 1 What's on the cooker? a saucepan .....
- 2 What's on the shelf? .....
- 3 What's in the cupboard under the shelf? .....
- 4 Where's the microwave? .....
- 5 What's next to the sink? .....
- 6 What's under the sink? .....

(See Unit 52: Places.)

## A Bedroom



## B Bathroom



## C Joanna's routine

Joanna goes to bed at 11 o'clock. She goes upstairs to her bedroom.



She gets undressed and gets into bed.



She reads for a bit.



She turns off the light and falls asleep.



She wakes up when her alarm clock rings.



She gets up.

She has a shower,



cleans her teeth



and gets dressed.



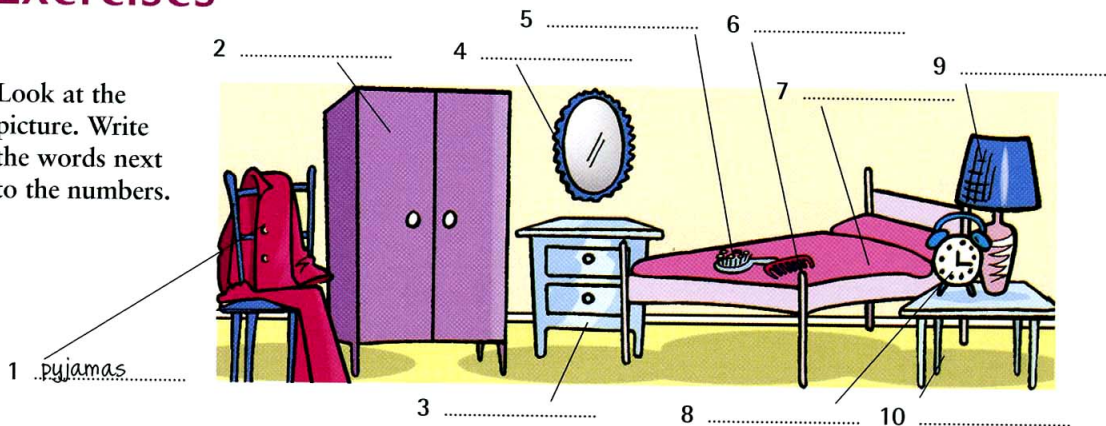
She goes downstairs to the kitchen for breakfast.



(See Unit 45: Everyday things.)

# Exercises

**12.1** Look at the picture. Write the words next to the numbers.



**12.2** Write down five more things that you need to take with you if you go to stay with a friend for one night.

toothbrush .....  
 .....  
 .....

**12.3** Look at the pictures. Describe what the people are doing.



1 Anne is cleaning her teeth.



3 Mrs Park .....



5 Jaime .....



2 Selim and Umit .....



4 Mr Park .....



6 Lee .....

**12.4** What is in your bathroom? Write the things down. Use a dictionary to help you.

**12.5** Are these sentences true about your bedroom? If not, change them to make them true.

- 1 My bedroom is upstairs. My bedroom is not upstairs. I live in a flat.
- 2 My bedroom has one large window.
- 3 In my bedroom there is a big bed.
- 4 There are two wardrobes, one on the left and one on the right of the room.
- 5 I have a small bedside table.
- 6 I've got a lamp and an alarm clock on my bedside table.
- 7 There is a chest of drawers under the window.
- 8 I haven't got a dressing table.

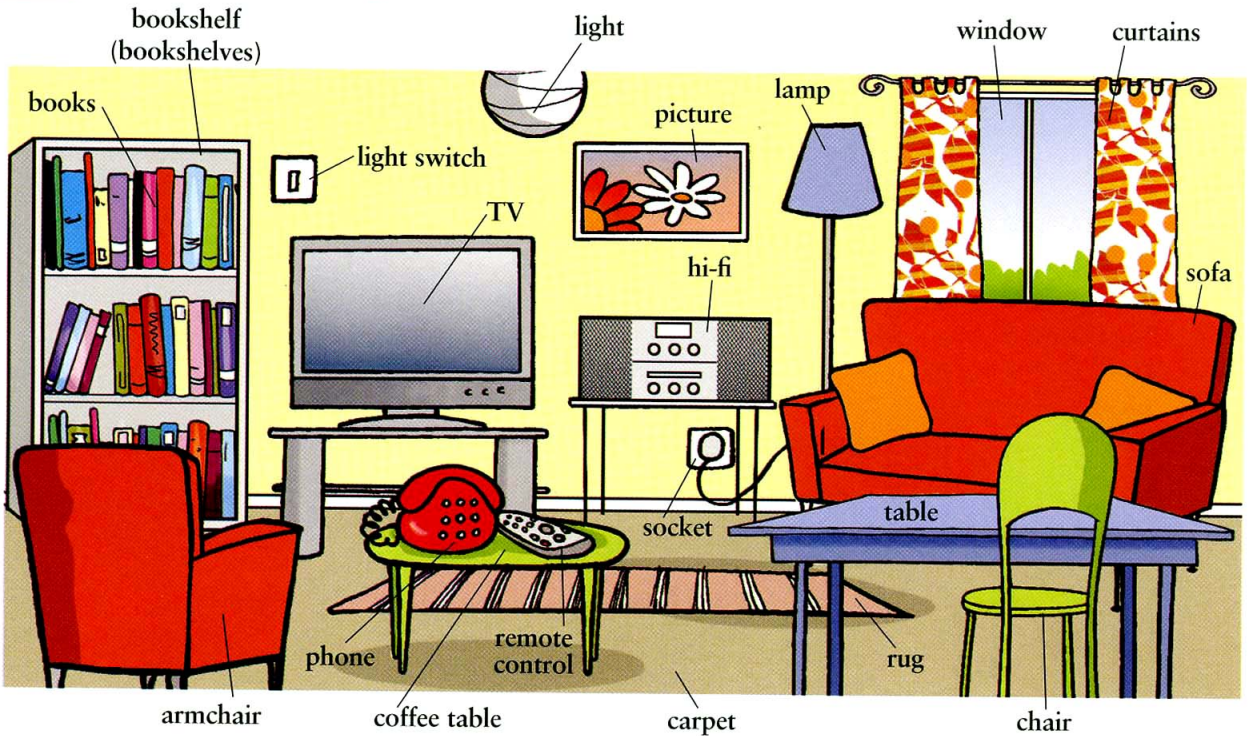
**12.6** Complete this paragraph about your night-time and morning routine.

I usually <sup>1</sup> go ..... to bed at <sup>2</sup> ..... I get <sup>3</sup> ..... and <sup>4</sup> ..... into bed. I usually read <sup>5</sup> ..... a bit. I turn <sup>6</sup> ..... the light and <sup>7</sup> ..... asleep. I <sup>8</sup> ..... up when my alarm clock rings. I get <sup>9</sup> ..... I have a <sup>10</sup> ..... , <sup>11</sup> ..... my teeth and <sup>12</sup> ..... dressed. I go to the kitchen for breakfast.



# 13 In the living room

## A Things in the living room



## B Useful verbs



Every evening I watch television.



Sometimes I listen to the radio or listen to music.



Sometimes I read a book.



Sometimes I just relax. [rest and do nothing]

## C Expressions



It's getting dark. Can you close the curtains, please?



OK. And I'll switch the light on.



Thanks. Now can you turn the radio off? And pass me the remote control. I want to turn on the TV. There's a good programme on.

### Error warning

The furniture in my room is white [NOT The furniture in my room are white].

# Exercises

## 13.1 Write the names of ...

- 1 somewhere you can put books. *a bookshelf*
- 2 somewhere two or three people can sit.
- 3 somewhere you can put down your cup.
- 4 something you can look at on the wall.
- 5 something for switching the light on or off.
- 6 something for listening to music.
- 7 something under your feet.
- 8 something for changing channels on the TV.

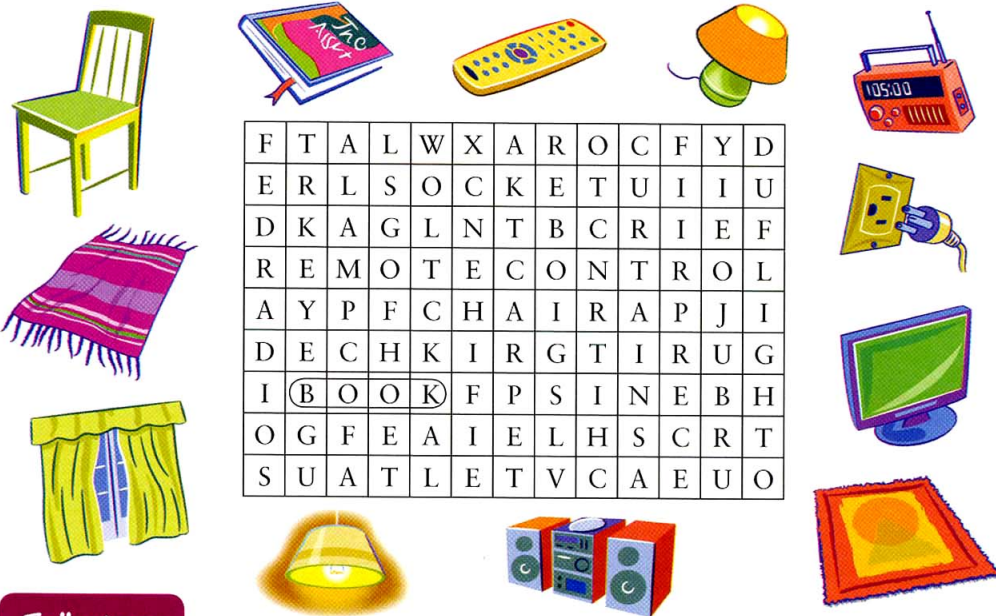
## 13.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1 switch on the | TV             |
| 2 relax in an   | lamp           |
| 3 close the     | remote control |
| 4 pass the      | radio          |
| 5 listen to the | armchair       |
| 6 watch         | curtains       |

## 13.3 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- 1 This evening let's just relax us at home. *This evening let's just relax at home.*
- 2 I don't often listen the radio. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 We need some more bookshelves in this room. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I watched at television all evening yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 It's dark now. Please make the curtains. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Jim has some very nice furnitures in his house. \_\_\_\_\_

## 13.4 Find 11 more words from this unit in the wordsearch.



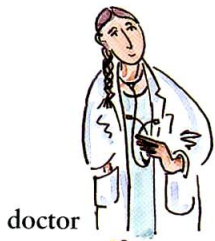
F	T	A	L	W	X	A	R	O	C	F	Y	D
E	R	L	S	O	C	K	E	T	U	I	I	U
D	K	A	G	L	N	T	B	C	R	I	E	F
R	E	M	O	T	E	C	O	N	T	R	O	L
A	Y	P	F	C	H	A	I	R	A	P	J	I
D	E	C	H	K	I	R	G	T	I	R	U	G
I	<b>B</b>	<b>O</b>	<b>O</b>	<b>K</b>	F	P	S	I	N	E	B	H
O	G	F	E	A	I	E	L	H	S	C	R	T
S	U	A	T	L	E	T	V	C	A	E	U	O

### Follow-up

Write about your living room at home. You can draw a plan of it first. What furniture is there in the room? What colour are the walls? Are there any pictures on them? What do you do when you are in your living room?

# 14 Jobs

## A What's his/her job?



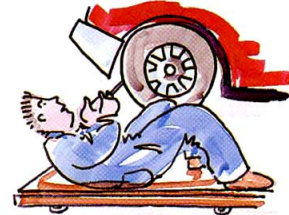
doctor



teacher



nurse



mechanic



secretary



shop assistant



hairdresser



engineer



farmer

## B Jobs in the town



police officer



traffic warden



librarian



bank clerk /kɪɹk/

## C Expressions

- SAM: What's your **job**?  
 BEN: I'm a **waiter**. I work in a **restaurant**. What do you do?  
 SAM: I'm a **taxi driver**.  
 BEN: Is it an interesting **job**?  
 SAM: Yes, I like it. Where do you **work**?  
 SOPHIE: I work in an **office**. Sometimes it's boring.



My dad works in a **factory** which makes car parts.  
 I worked in a **shop** at the weekends when I was a student.  
 I want to work in a **beauty salon** as a **hairdresser**.  
 I'd like to work in a children's **hospital**.  
 I'm a writer. I work **at / from** home.

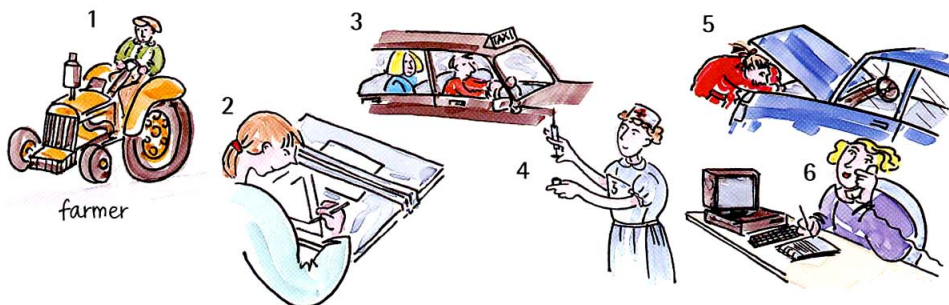
# Exercises

## 14.1 Where do they work?

- 1 A teacher works in a school / college / university.
- 2 A doctor .....
- 3 A waiter .....
- 4 A secretary .....
- 5 A shop assistant .....
- 6 A hairdresser .....

## 14.2 Match the pictures with the jobs in the box.

nurse   farmer   secretary   taxi driver   engineer   mechanic



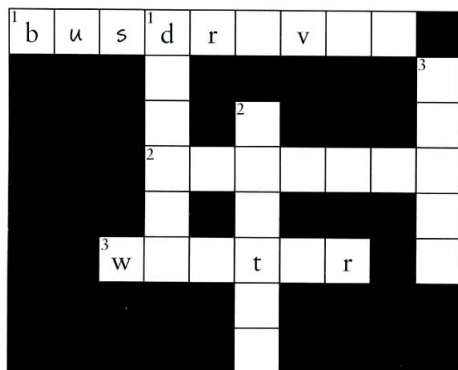
## 14.3 Complete the crossword.

### Across

- 1 works on a bus
- 2 works in a school
- 3 writes books

### Down

- 1 works in a hospital
- 2 works in a restaurant
- 3 works with the doctor



## 14.4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 He works in a factory..... which makes electrical goods.
- 2 She's an ..... . She builds roads and bridges.
- 3 The traffic ..... is checking all the parked cars.
- 4 The ..... told me to return the book at the end of the month.
- 5 The bank ..... changed some money for me.
- 6 A police ..... told me the way to the station.

## 14.5 Answer the questions for yourself.

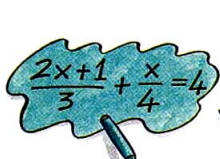
- 1 What do you do?
- 2 Where do you work?
- 3 Is it an interesting job?

# 15 At school and university

## A Subjects



English



maths



art



history



geography



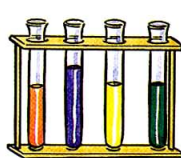
biology



ICT (information communication technology)



PE (physical education)



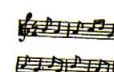
chemistry



modern languages

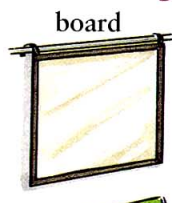


physics



music

## B Useful things



board



noticeboard



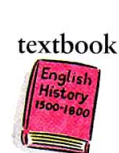
cassette



piece of paper



pencil



textbook



board pen

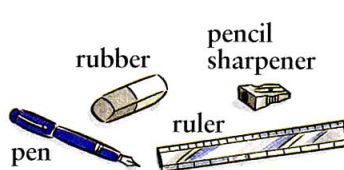
board rubber



drawing pin



tape recorder

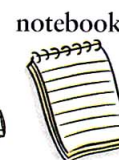


rubber

pencil sharpener

ruler

pen



notebook



desk



OHP (overhead projector)



computer



DVD player

## C Expressions

A maths teacher teaches maths. Her students study maths.

Children go to school and students go to university.

At school children learn to read and write.

Students can do an (English) course in many schools and universities. At the end of a course, you often take / do an exam. You hope to pass your exams. You don't want to fail your exams.

If you pass your final exams at university, you get a degree.

### Error warning

After school, students do homework [NOT make homework or do homeworks]. (See Units 38 and 39 for more expressions with *do* and *make*.)

# Exercises

**15.1** Match the subject on the left with what you study on the right.

- |             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| 1 maths     | a animals and plants         |
| 2 physics   | b sport                      |
| 3 history   | c $25y + 32x = 51z$          |
| 4 geography | d $e = mc^2$                 |
| 5 PE        | e H <sub>2</sub> O           |
| 6 English   | f the countries of the world |
| 7 chemistry | g the 15th century           |
| 8 biology   | h computers                  |
| 9 ICT       | i spelling                   |

**15.2** Look at the picture for 30 seconds. Then cover it. How many of the ten objects can you remember? Write them down in English.



**15.3** Which of the things in B on the opposite page are in the room where you study English? Write them here.

In the room where I study English I can see .....

.....

.....

**15.4** Choose a verb from C opposite to fill the gaps below. Put the verb in the correct form.

John does well at school. He finds it easy to <sup>1</sup> learn ..... and he always <sup>2</sup> ..... his homework. He usually <sup>3</sup> ..... all his exams. He will <sup>4</sup> ..... his final school exams soon. If he <sup>5</sup> ..... , he will <sup>6</sup> ..... to university next year. If he <sup>7</sup> ..... , he will be very sad. John really wants to <sup>8</sup> ..... geography at university. He would also like to <sup>9</sup> ..... a special geology course. His sister is already at university. Next year she will <sup>10</sup> ..... her degree and then she will try to find a job.

**15.5** Which are/were your three favourite subjects? Which subjects (if any) do / did you not like?

.....

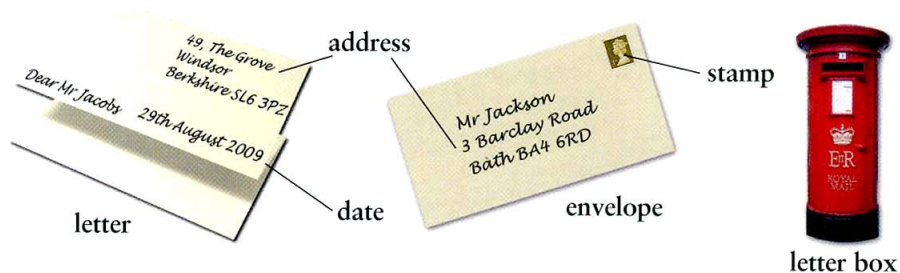
.....

## Tip

Draw two columns on a piece of paper. In one column write five words from the opposite page which you want to learn. In the second column put a drawing (or a translation or a definition). Cover the first column and look at the second column. Can you remember the English words?

# 16 Communications

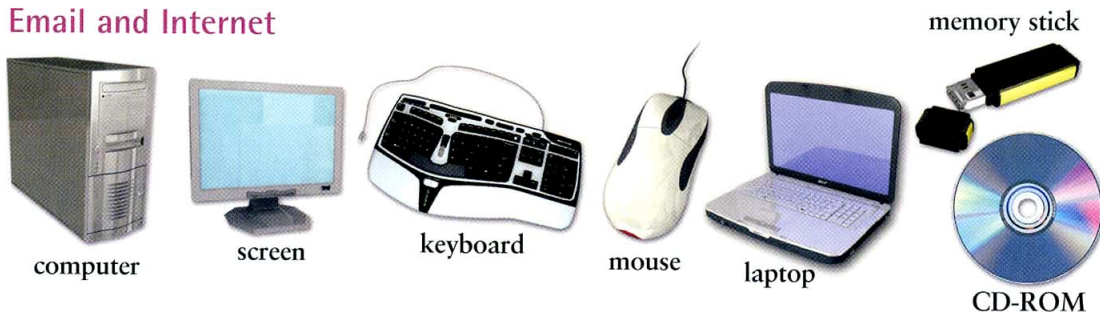
## A Letters



Don't forget to put a **stamp** on the **envelope**.

Don't forget to **post** the letters.

## B Email and Internet



Anne gets a lot of **emails** from New York.

You have to be careful what information you give people **online**.

What's your **email address**? Moll@cup.com (= Moll at C-U-P dot C-O-M)

## C Telephones and mobile devices



Juan makes a lot of **phone calls**. He phones his girlfriend every day.



I always take my PDA with me. I never turn it off.

What's your **phone number**? What's your **mobile number**?  
066530718 (= oh six six five three oh seven one eight / oh double six five ...)

He's not answering his phone. I'll leave a **voicemail** and I'll text him / send him a **text (message)**.

## D Expressions

SUE: Hello.

NICK: Hello. **It's Nick here**. Can I **speak to Ahmed**, please?

SUE: I'm sorry, he's not here at the moment.  
Can I **take a message**?

NICK: Thanks. Could you just tell **him I called**. I'll call back later.

SUE: OK. I'll tell him. Goodbye.

NICK: Bye.

### Tip

Use a search engine to find an example of a letter and an email in English. Write down any useful words or phrases in them.

# Exercises

16.1 Have you got any of the things on the opposite page? Make a list.

mobile

16.2 What are the names of these things?



- |                 |         |         |          |
|-----------------|---------|---------|----------|
| 1 keyboard..... | 4 ..... | 7 ..... | 10 ..... |
| 2 .....         | 5 ..... | 8 ..... | 11 ..... |
| 3 .....         | 6 ..... | 9 ..... | 12 ..... |

16.3 Complete this phone conversation.

SALLY: Hello.  
 MEENA: Hello. <sup>1</sup>It's..... Meena here. Can I <sup>2</sup>..... to Amal, please?  
 SALLY: I'm <sup>3</sup>....., he's at work <sup>4</sup>..... the moment. Can I <sup>5</sup>.....  
 a message?  
 MEENA: It's all right. I'll <sup>6</sup>..... back later.  
 SALLY: OK, then. Bye.  
 MEENA: Bye.

16.4 Write down:

- 1 two telephone numbers that are important to you.  
 .....
- 2 two email addresses that are important to you.  
 .....

Now read them aloud.

16.5 Answer these questions.

- 1 Do you prefer to text or phone your friends?
- 2 Do you send more emails or more text messages?
- 3 How often do you go online?
- 4 Do you prefer to use a laptop or a mobile device?
- 5 Do you often write letters?



# 17 Holidays

## A Holiday (noun)

We had a lovely holiday in Egypt in 2008.

I'm not working next week. I'm on holiday.

Are you going on holiday this summer?

## B Types of holidays

We're going on a package holiday to Hong Kong. (flights and hotel are included)

We're going to have a winter holiday this year.

I want to go camping this year. (sleep in a tent)

I'm going on a walking holiday in the Alps.

A coach tour is an easy way to go on holiday. (travelling in a comfortable bus)

## C Transport



## D Don't forget to take ...

your passport (if you are going to another country)

a visa (a stamp that you need in your passport to go to some countries)

your tickets

some traveller's cheques and currency (money of the country you are going to)

a camera

a phrasebook

your luggage /'lʌɡɪdʒ/ (e.g. a suitcase or a rucksack)



## E Expressions

A: Are you flying to France from England?

B: No, we're going by ferry.

A: What are you going to do in Madrid?

B: We want to try the local food and enjoy the nightlife (clubs, etc.).

A: Have a great time! And send me a postcard!

(See Unit 30: Travelling and Unit 47: Moving for more words about travel.)

# Exercises

## 17.1 Complete the sentences.

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1 A: Are you working on Monday?           | B: No, I'm <u>on</u> ..... holiday.   |
| 2 A: Are you ..... on holiday this year?  | B: Yes, I'm going camping.            |
| 3 A: Did you have a good ..... in Greece? | B: Yes, it was wonderful.             |
| 4 A: Are you flying to Italy?             | B: No, I'm going ..... train.         |
| 5 A: I'm going to New York next week.     | B: Great! Please ..... me a postcard. |







## 17.2 What type of holiday is each person talking about?

- |  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| 1 It was fun but the tent was very small.                      | <u>camping</u> ..... |
| 2 Everything was included – hotels and flights.                | .....                |
| 3 We were on the coach for seven days. I was very tired.       | .....                |
| 4 We walked about 20 kilometres every day.                     | .....                |
| 5 We went to Switzerland in December. There was a lot of snow. | .....                |

## 17.3 Look at the different ways of travelling. Put one tick (✓) for sometimes true, two ticks for often true and three ticks for always true.

	you can take a lot of luggage	very fast	cheap	you see a lot as you travel	relaxing
ferry					
car	✓✓✓				
plane					

## 17.4 Write the names of these things you need for a holiday.

- |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
|  |  |  |
| 1 <u>currency</u> .....   | 3 .....   | 5 .....   |
|  |  |  |
| 2 .....   | 4 .....   | 6 .....   |


## 17.5 What do we call:

- something you take photos with? a camera.....
- a special stamp in your passport to enter a country? a v.....
- something you fly in? a p.....
- something that you carry things on your back in? a r.....
- cheques you can use in different countries? t..... c.....
- what people carry their clothes in when they go on holiday? a s.....

## 17.6 Fill the gaps in this postcard.

I'm having a great <sup>1</sup>time..... here in Spain. The <sup>2</sup>..... is great – the clubs are open all night. The <sup>3</sup>..... food is very good – lots of fish and salads. Please send me a <sup>4</sup>..... from your holiday in Italy.

Love,  
Alex


---



---



---



---

# 18 Shops and shopping

## A Kinds of shops



\* These words are also for people's jobs. We often add 's and say: I'm going to the newsagent's to get a paper. Do you want anything from the butcher's?

## B In the department store

A department store is a large shop which sells a lot of different things – clothes, beauty products, toys, etc.

BASEMENT	Electricals Food
GROUND FLOOR	Beauty
FIRST FLOOR	Women's Wear
SECOND FLOOR	Men's Clothes Children's Department
THIRD FLOOR	Furniture
FOURTH FLOOR	Toys Restaurant

## C Signs in shops




## D Expressions


- SHOP ASSISTANT: Can I help you?  
 CUSTOMER: Can I try **this shirt on?** (*goes and tries it on*) Have you got a **bigger / smaller size / a different colour?**  
 SHOP ASSISTANT: No, I'm sorry. That's the only one.  
 CUSTOMER: OK. I'll take it. How much does it cost?  
 SHOP ASSISTANT: £17.  
 CUSTOMER: Can I pay by cheque?  
 SHOP ASSISTANT: No, **credit card** or cash only.  
 CUSTOMER: Sorry, I only have a £50 **note**. I don't have any **change**. [coins or smaller notes]  
 SHOP ASSISTANT: That's OK. Here's your **receipt**. Would you like a (carrier) **bag?**

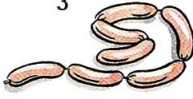
# Exercises


## 18.1 Match the item with the shop.


toy shop   butcher   ~~chemist~~   baker   gift shop   newsagent


1  aspirin

2  beach ball

3  sausages

4  postcards

5  souvenir T-shirt

6  bread

## 18.2 Where do you need to go?

- I want to get a newspaper. *the newsagent*
- I'd like to buy food for a week.
- I need some stamps.
- We must get Jim a present.
- I'd like to buy a book.
- I want to buy some clothes for myself and my children in one shop.

## 18.3 Look at the department store plan in B opposite. Which floor will you go to buy:

- |                                   |                            |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 an armchair? <i>third floor</i> | 6 some baby clothes? ..... |
| 2 lipstick? .....                 | 7 a tie? .....             |
| 3 a cup of tea? .....             | 8 a TV? .....              |
| 4 a packet of tea? .....          | 9 a bed? .....             |
| 5 a skirt? .....                  | 10 a doll? .....           |

## 18.4 Write the words for these definitions.

- |   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| 1 a person who sells things in a shop <i>shop assistant</i> | 4 'plastic money'      |
| 2 money (not a cheque or credit card)                       | 5 coins or small notes |
| 3 a piece of paper that is worth £20                        |                        |

Now write definitions in English for these words/phrases.

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 6 a butcher's     | 8 a newsagent's |
| 7 the first floor | 9 the basement  |

## 18.5 Which sign tells you ...

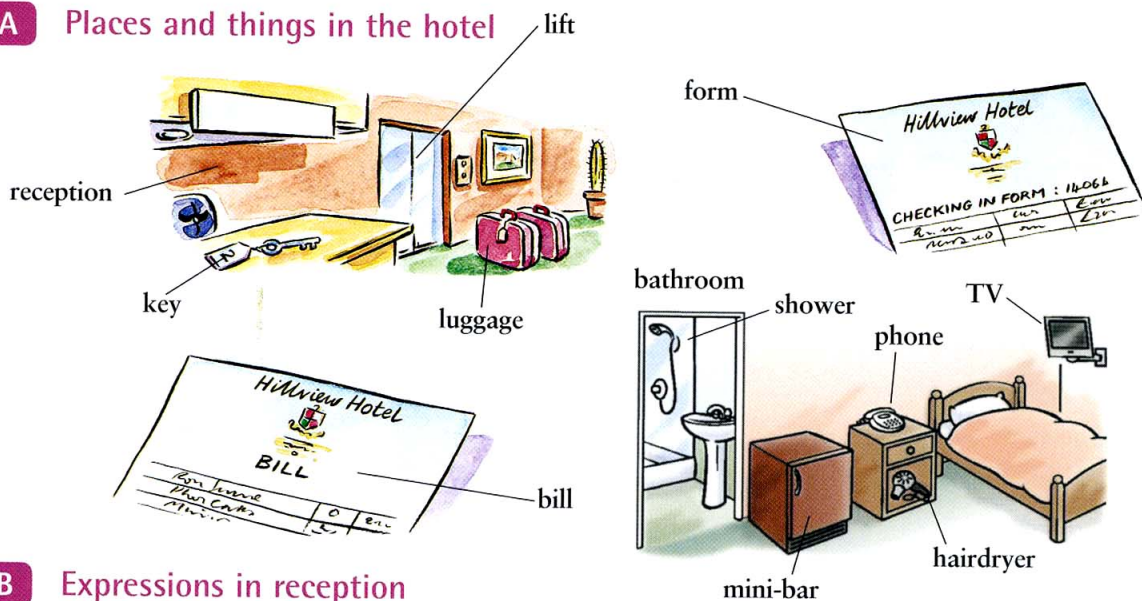
- that you can give the money for the things you are buying here? *Cash desk*
- that you can't go into the shop?
- that the door will open towards you?
- that the door will open away from you?
- that you can go into the shop?



## 18.6 Fill the gaps in the dialogue.

CUSTOMER: How much does this jacket <sup>1</sup>..... ?  
 SHOP ASSISTANT: £50.  
 CUSTOMER: I'll take it, please. Can I <sup>2</sup>..... by credit card?  
 SHOP ASSISTANT: Certainly. I'll put your receipt in the <sup>3</sup>..... .

## A Places and things in the hotel



## B Expressions in reception

Do you have a **single room** [for one person] / a **double room** [for two people]?

I have a **reservation**. [I booked a room] My name is ...

We'd like a **room with a view** of the sea.

The receptionist may say:

Here is your **key**.

Your room is **on the first floor**. Take the **lift**. It's over there.

Would you like **some help with your luggage**?

Can you **fill in this form**, please?

**Sign (your name)** here, please. [write your name]

Please **check your bill**. [make sure it is correct]

When you leave you say:

Can I **check out**, please?

Can I have the **bill**, please?

## C Asking questions about hotel services

How much is a **single room with a bathroom**?

Can I order **room service**?

How do I get an **outside line**? (You want to phone someone who is not in the hotel.)

What is the **code for Poland**?

Can I have **breakfast in my room**, please?

Can I have a **wake-up call** at 6.30, please? (You want to wake up at 6.30.)


What **time** is breakfast / lunch / dinner?

Can I (ex)change **some money**, please?

# Exercises

## 19.1 Look at the pictures and complete the dialogue with words from the opposite page.

CUSTOMER: Can I have a  <sup>1</sup> double ..... room for tonight, please?

RECEPTIONIST: Would you like a room with a  <sup>2</sup> ..... ?

CUSTOMER: Yes, please. And with a  <sup>3</sup> ..... , please.

RECEPTIONIST: All our rooms have a TV, a  <sup>4</sup> ..... and a



<sup>5</sup> ..... . I can give you room 25. It has a view of the



<sup>6</sup> ..... . Here is your  <sup>7</sup> ..... . The



<sup>8</sup> ..... is over there. The room's on the second floor.

## 19.2 Match what you want on the left with what you need on the right.

You want:

- 1 to have a drink in your room
- 2 to go to the top floor
- 3 to open your door
- 4 to get up at 6 am
- 5 to phone your country
- 6 to watch the news
- 7 to wash your hair
- 8 to dry your hair

You need:

- a the lift
- b an outside line
- c a shower
- d a mini-bar
- e a hairdryer
- f a wake-up call
- g a TV
- h a key

## 19.3 Choose the right words to complete these sentences.

- 1 At reception / reservation you can order room / lift service.
- 2 We'd like a two / double room with a view / see of the garden, please.
- 3 The lift is after / over there. Take it to the second floor / room.
- 4 Please fill / write in this form / bill.
- 5 I'd like a sit-up / wake-up call at 7.30 and I'd like to make / have breakfast in my room, please.
- 6 I have a luggage / reservation for a single / one room with a bathroom.
- 7 Can I cash / have the bill, please? I'll check / change it now.
- 8 I'm leaving today. Can I exchange / order some dollars here before I pay / check out?

## 19.4 Write down questions that you can ask in a hotel beginning: Can I ... ? Use these words.

wake-up call Can I have a wake-up call, please?

breakfast in my room bill double room luggage

## 19.5 Answer the questions.

- 1 How much does a hotel room cost in the capital of your country?
- 2 What is the code for Britain if you phone from your country?
- 3 What time is breakfast usually in a hotel in your country?
- 4 Is it most important for you to have a hairdryer, a TV or a mini-bar in a hotel room?

# 20 Eating out

## A Places where you can eat

**café:** you can have a cup of tea / coffee and a snack there (e.g. a sandwich or a cake). They sometimes serve meals (e.g. lunch, dinner) too.

**restaurant:** you go there for a meal; more expensive than a café.

**bar / pub:** bars and pubs serve alcohol and soft drinks [non-alcoholic drinks, e.g. fruit juice]; you can usually have a meal or a snack there too.

**fast food restaurant:** you can get a quick hot meal there, for example burger and chips.

**take-away:** you buy a snack or a meal there and take it home to eat.

## B In a restaurant



### Menu

#### **Starters**

Soup of the day (v)

Mixed salad (v)

#### **Main courses**

Steak with chips or new potatoes

Fish and chips

Vegetable curry (v)

Salmon fillet with green beans

Burger with chips and mushrooms

#### **Desserts**

Chocolate ice cream

Apple pie

Fruit salad

(v = vegetarian)

## C Expressions

WAITER: Are you ready to order?

CUSTOMER: Yes, I'd like the steak, please.

WAITER: Would you like it with chips or new potatoes?

CUSTOMER: With chips, please.

WAITER: How would you like your steak – rare, medium or well-done?

CUSTOMER: Well-done, please.

WAITER: And what would you like to drink?

CUSTOMER: I'll have a coke, please.

(later)

WAITER: Is everything all right?

CUSTOMER: Thank you, it's delicious. [very good]

(later)

CUSTOMER: Could I have the bill, please?

WAITER: Yes, of course.

# Exercises

**20.1** Look at A opposite. Where would you go to ...

- 1 buy a meal and take it home to eat? a take-away
- 2 have a romantic dinner for two? .....
- 3 eat a quick lunch? .....
- 4 have a cake and a cup of coffee? .....
- 5 drink a glass of wine with friends? .....

**20.2** Write down the name of a place of this type in your town.

- 1 fast food restaurant: McDonald's
- 2 café: .....
- 3 take-away: .....
- 4 restaurant: .....
- 5 bar: .....

**20.3** Choose one of the words in the box which can go with each of the words in each group.

steak    curry    pie    ~~soup~~    salad

- 1 You can have tomato / vegetable / chicken soup..... as a starter.
- 2 I'd like the beef / chicken / vegetable ..... as a main course.
- 3 I'll have the mixed / tomato / fruit .....
- 4 Can I have the apple / chicken ..... , please.
- 5 Do you like your ..... well-done, medium or rare?

**20.4** Correct the six mistakes in this dialogue.

- WAITER: Are you ready ~~for~~ order? to
- CUSTOMER: Yes. I like vegetable soup and steak, please.
- WAITER: What would you like your steak? Rare, medium or done good?
- CUSTOMER: Rare, please.
- WAITER: What you would like to drink?
- CUSTOMER: A orange juice, please.

**20.5** Cover the menu opposite. Write the food you can remember. Look at the menu again and check your answers.

**20.6** Answer these questions.

- 1 What would you choose to eat from the menu opposite?
- 2 What can vegetarians eat from the menu?
- 3 Do you like eating out?
- 4 How often do you go to a restaurant?

## Follow-up

Sometimes restaurants in other countries have English menus for tourists. Look at one of these. Write down any useful words you find.



# 21 Sports

## A Ball games

We play all these sports.



football



rugby



American football



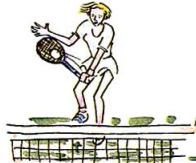
basketball



badminton



baseball



tennis



volleyball

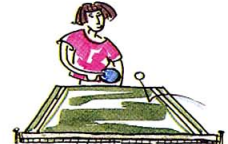


table tennis

## B Other popular sports



swimming

running



sailing



motor racing



horse racing



judo / karate



snowboarding



skiing



kayaking

We can use **go** with all the sports listed in B, apart from judo and karate. I go running every day. I went skiing last year. We use **do** with judo and karate. She does judo.

(See Unit 37: Go / went / gone.)

## C Where we do sports

We play tennis / badminton / volleyball / basketball on a tennis / badminton / volleyball / basketball court.

We play football / rugby on a football / rugby pitch.

We swim in a swimming pool.

Many towns have a sports centre – you can do lots of different sports there.

## D Expressions

Do you do any sports? Yes, I go swimming / running / sailing / kayaking.

Do you play football / tennis / badminton? I play tennis. Which sports do you play?

What's your favourite sport? I like motor racing best.

# Exercises

21.1 Cover the opposite page. What are these sports?



1 tennis .....



3 .....



5 .....



2 .....



4 .....



6 .....

21.2 Which sports use these things?



1 kayaking .....



3 .....



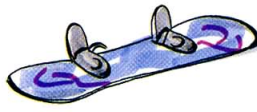
5 .....



7 .....



2 .....



4 .....



6 .....



8 .....

21.3 Ask questions for these answers.

- 1 Where do people play tennis? .....  
On a tennis court.
- 2 Do you .....  
Yes, but only American football.
- 3 .....  
No, I don't do any at all. I prefer watching TV.
- 4 Do you .....  
Yes, I go to the swimming pool every Friday.
- 5 What .....  
I like running best.
- 6 Where .....  
On a rugby pitch.

21.4 Look at the different sports in this unit.

- 1 Write the names of the sports you have done. ....
- 2 Where did you do them? .....
- 3 Which ones do you like? .....
- 4 Which do you not like? .....
- 5 Which ones would you like to do? .....

## Follow-up

Make a page in your vocabulary book for 'sports'. Look at the sports pages of an English-language newspaper. Write down the names of sports you do not know. Look them up in a dictionary.

# 22 Cinema

## A Types of films



a western



a horror film



an action film



a musical



a cartoon



a comedy



a thriller



a science fiction film



a romantic comedy

## B People in films

Zelda Glitzberg is a film star.

She lives in Hollywood.

She is **in** the new James Bond film.

Daniel Radcliffe **played** Harry Potter in the Harry Potter films.

I like films by Italian directors.



## C Expressions

### Error warning

Do you go to the cinema often?  
[NOT Do you go to cinema often?]

Yes, I go every week.

No, I watch DVDs at home.

### Error warning

What's on at the cinema this week? [NOT What's on the cinema this week?]

There's a comedy with Cameron Diaz.

A: Have you **seen** the latest James Bond film?

B: Yes, I saw it **on TV**.

A: Did you like the new *Batman* film?

B: Yes, I **loved it / enjoyed it**. /

No, it was **boring**.

A: Do you like **westerns**? B: No, I like **science fiction** films best.

The best **action film** I've seen was *Quantum of Solace* with Daniel Craig.

If I see a **horror film**, I can't sleep.

# Exercises

## 22.1 What types of films are these?

- 1 Some cowboys rob a train. *western*
- 2 A flying saucer lands from Mars.
- 3 A dead person comes back to life.
- 4 James Bond saves the world.
- 5 Mickey Mouse goes on a picnic.
- 6 A man falls in love with his teacher.
- 7 A dead body is found in the river.
- 8 There are lots of songs and dancing.

## 22.2 Write the name of a film of each type.

- 1 science fiction *War of the Worlds*.....
- 2 romantic comedy .....
- 3 thriller .....
- 4 western .....
- 5 musical .....
- 6 cartoon .....

## 22.3 Word puzzle. Can you make words for other types of films with the letters of ROMANTIC?

T H R I L L E R  
..... O ..... R  
C ..... M ..... Y  
A ..... T ..... N  
S ..... N C ..... F ..... N  
W ..... T ..... N  
M ..... I C ..... L  
C A ..... O O .....

## 22.4 Fill the gaps in these sentences.

- 1 Do you prefer going *to the*..... cinema or watching TV?
- 2 We ..... a DVD last night.
- 3 Who ..... James Bond in *You Only Live Twice*?
- 4 Was Matt Damon ..... *The Bourne Ultimatum*?
- 5 Lots of big ..... live in Hollywood.
- 6 Steven Spielberg is a famous American film .....

## 22.5 Answer these questions.

- 1 What is your favourite type of film?
- 2 Who is your favourite film star?
- 3 Do you prefer going to the cinema or watching DVDs?
- 4 What was the last film you saw?
- 5 How can you find out what is on at the cinema where you live or study?

### Follow-up

Go to the *Time* magazine website of the 100 best films in the world [http://www.time.com/time/2005/100movies/the\\_complete\\_list.html](http://www.time.com/time/2005/100movies/the_complete_list.html). Choose three English-language films you would like to see.

## A TV, radio, music, film

I watch TV every evening.

Did you **watch** / see the film about President Kennedy?

What **programmes** do you like best on TV and radio?

I like **watching** films on TV. (You can also say: I like to watch ...)

At the weekend, we usually **watch** a DVD.

I like **listening** to music on the radio. (You can also say: I like to listen ...)

I often **listen** to CDs or my **MP3** player when I'm relaxing.

I need some new **headphones** for my MP3 player.



## B Hobbies

A lot of young people **play** computer games every day.

How often do you use **the Internet**?

I **download** music and films from the Internet.

I **chat** to my friends **online** every evening.

I really like **cooking**.

Do you like **gardening**? /'gɑ:dniŋ/

We **grow** flowers and **vegetables** in our garden.



## C Reading

I read a lot at home.

What do you read?

I read **novels**. [long stories] My sister likes **comics**.

I like **books** about nature and different countries.

I like **magazines** about rock music and sport.

Do you read a **newspaper** every day?



## D Expressions

We sometimes **have** friends **round**.

[we ask them to come to our house / flat]

I often **have** friends to **dinner**.

My best friend **comes** to **stay** sometimes.

[sleeps in my house / flat]

I **talk** to my friends **on the phone** every evening.

Sometimes, I just **do** **nothing**.

Grandpa likes to **have** a sleep after lunch.



## Error warning

We watch TV [NOT see-TV] and we listen to the radio [NOT hear-or-listen-the-radio].

# Exercises

## 23.1 What are these people doing?



1 She's watching TV.



3 He's ..... a



5 She's using the .....



2 He's .....



4 She's .....



6 He's .....  
to .....

## 23.2 Fill in the missing verbs.

- 1 Sometimes I listen ..... to CDs or an MP3 player.
- 2 I like ..... magazines more than newspapers.
- 3 I ..... to my sister on the phone every Sunday.
- 4 A lot of people like to ..... a sleep after lunch.
- 5 Do you ever ..... friends to dinner?
- 6 The children ..... computer games every evening.
- 7 I want to ..... some music from the Internet this evening.
- 8 Did you ..... the programme about Namibia yesterday?
- 9 My dad ..... vegetables in his garden.
- 10 Shall we ..... a DVD tonight?

## 23.3 Answer these questions.

- 1 When you have friends round, what do you like to do?
- 2 Who comes to stay at your house / flat?
- 3 What do you like to read most?
- 4 How often do you talk to your friends on the phone?
- 5 Do you have an MP3 player? How often do you use it?
- 6 How often do you chat to your friends online?
- 7 Do you ever download music or films from the Internet?
- 8 What is your favourite computer game?
- 9 When do you use headphones?

## 23.4 Interesting or boring? Number these activities from 5 (= very interesting) to 1 (= very boring).

gardening	cooking	reading	using the Internet	watching DVDs
listening to music	doing nothing	chatting online		

## A Music, musical and musician

Music is an uncountable noun. We do not use it in the plural.  
The band played fantastic **music** for more than two hours  
[NOT ~~fantastic musics~~].

Musical is an adjective.

There is a shop on King Street that sells **musical** instruments  
[NOT ~~music instruments~~].

A **musician** (noun) is a person.

My brother is a very good **musician**. He plays three instruments.



## B Musical instruments



piano



guitar



violin



clarinet



cello



flute



trumpet



drums

## C Playing musical instruments

Connie plays the **clarinet**. Her brother plays the **drums**.

Krishnan is learning the **guitar**. His friend, Alba, has **piano** lessons.

Wilma is a very good **flute-player**. She **plays in an orchestra**. Her friend, Nuria, is a good **trumpet-player**.

Ricardo is an excellent **violinist**. His sister is a good **pianist**.

Can you **play a musical instrument**?

## D Listening to music

Kim loves **classical music**. (for example, Beethoven, Mozart) [NOT ~~classie music~~]

Marsha **can't stand opera**. [dislikes it very much] She prefers **pop music**.

I like **folk music, jazz and rock**.

I often **listen to my MP3 player** on the train.

I **downloaded some new songs** yesterday. Do you want to hear them?

**Error warning**

A band means a group of musicians. We do not say 'a music band'.

Nuala had a really good band at her 21st birthday party.

A concert means an event with music. We do not say a 'music concert'.

We're going to a concert tonight.

# Exercises

## 24.1 Choose the correct word: *music*, *musical* or *musician*.

- 1 What are your favourite types of *music*..... ?
- 2 My brother thinks he's a good ....., but he's very bad!
- 3 Can you play a ..... instrument?
- 4 I love different types of ....., for example, jazz, rock and classical.
- 5 Which ..... instrument would you like to learn?
- 6 Are there any ..... in your family?

## 24.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



Alex



Donna



Suzanna



Chunshen



Emma



Patricia



William



Bethan

- 1 Suzanna plays the *violin*..... .
- 2 ..... plays the cello in an .....
- 3 Chunshen loves playing the .....
- 4 Donna is having a ..... lesson.
- 5 Alex is a very good .....-player.
- 6 Bethan plays the ..... every evening.
- 7 William ..... the .....
- 8 Emma is learning the ..... . She will be a good flute-..... one day.
- 9 ..... is a violinist.
- 10 ..... wants to be a pianist.

## 24.3 Choose the correct answer, a, b or c.

- 1 I love a) classic **b) classical** c) classist music. Beethoven is my favourite.
- 2 My brother a) can't stand b) can stand c) can't stay folk music but I love it.
- 3 I have some tickets for a) a concert music b) music concert c) concert at the Town Hall. Would you like one?
- 4 I always a) listen in b) listen to c) listen my MP3 player when I'm studying.
- 5 My sister plays in a) a music band b) band music c) band with three other girls from her school.

## 24.4 Answer these questions.

- 1 How often do you download music?
- 2 Which musical instrument on the opposite page do you like best?
- 3 Can you play a musical instrument?
- 4 Which musical instrument would you like to learn?
- 5 Do you prefer classical music or pop music?



## A Continents and countries



continent	country	continent	country
North America	Canada	Australasia	Australia
	USA / the US		New Zealand
South America	Argentina	Asia	China
	Brazil		India
	Chile		Japan
	Colombia		Pakistan
	Peru		Thailand
Europe	Germany	Africa	Egypt
	Italy		Morocco
	Poland		South Africa
	Spain		Tunisia
	the UK		
		Antarctica	

It is not possible to show all the countries of the world on a small page. If your country is not included, check its English name with your teacher or on the Internet.

**Error warning**

All the nouns and adjectives in this unit always begin with a capital letter, for example Africa [NOT africa].

## B Nationalities

notes	adjective
most country adjectives end in <i>(i)an</i>	American, Argentinian, Australian, Brazilian, Canadian, Colombian, Egyptian, German, Indian, Italian, Moroccan, Peruvian, South African, Tunisian
many country adjectives end in <i>ish</i>	British, English, Finnish, Irish, Polish, Scottish, Spanish
a few country adjectives end in <i>ese</i>	Chinese, Japanese, Portuguese
exceptions	Pakistani, Thai

**Tip**

Remember that words for languages are often the same as the 'people' adjective, e.g. French, Spanish, Japanese and Thai. One exception is Arabic.

# Exercises

## 25.1 Which countries do these letters make?

- |          |       |            |  |
|----------|-------|------------|--|
| 1 HINAC  | China | 4 OCRMOOC  |  |
| 2 ZIRALB |       | 5 ANJAP    |  |
| 3 PINS A |       | 6 DALTHINA |  |

## 25.2 Match these capital cities to their countries and make sentences.

- 1 Tokyo Tokyo is the capital of Japan.
- 2 Rome
- 3 Canberra
- 4 Bogotá
- 5 Cairo
- 6 London
- 7 Berlin
- 8 Warsaw
- 9 Buenos Aires
- 10 Madrid

Argentina	Australia	Colombia	
Egypt	Germany	Italy	Japan
Poland	Spain	the UK	

## 25.3 Which country is different? (Think of the languages they speak there.) Write sentences.

- 1 Australia, Canada, England, Iceland In England, Canada and Australia they speak English but in Iceland they speak Icelandic.
- 2 Brazil, Chile, Mexico, Spain
- 3 Austria, Germany, Italy, Switzerland
- 4 China, Egypt, Morocco, Saudi Arabia
- 5 Canada, France, Scotland, Switzerland

## 25.4 What is the adjective for these countries?

- |             |        |             |
|-------------|--------|-------------|
| 1 Indian    | Indian | 6 Spain     |
| 2 Thailand  |        | 7 Peru      |
| 3 Germany   |        | 8 China     |
| 4 Egypt     |        | 9 Australia |
| 5 Argentina |        | 10 Poland   |

## 25.5 Write down:

- 1 the name of your country.
- 2 the names of the countries next to your country.
- 3 the name of your language.
- 4 the name for people from your country.

### Follow-up

In which continents are these places? Use the Internet to help you.

Mount Everest Asia  
the Sahara  
the Amazon  
Wagga Wagga  
the Volga  
Mount Kilimanjaro  
the Mississippi  
Mount Fuji  
Lake Titicaca

# 26 Weather

## A Types of weather



sun



rain



cloud



snow



fog



wind



thunder



lightning

## B Adjectives and verbs

noun	adjective
sun	sunny
rain	rainy
wind	windy
cloud	cloudy
snow	snowy
fog	foggy
thunder	thundery
lightning	–

## C Other useful weather words

It is very **hot** in Mexico – it is often **45 degrees** there in summer.

It is very **cold** in the Arctic – it is often **minus 50 degrees** there.

It can be very **wet** in London – carry an umbrella when you go sightseeing there.

It is very **dry** in the Sahara – it doesn't often rain there.

A **hurricane** is a very strong wind.

A **storm** is when there is a strong wind and rain together.

A **thunderstorm** is when there is thunder, lightning, rain and sometimes wind together.

## D Expressions

It's a **sunny day** in Tokyo today, but it's **cloudy** in Hong Kong.

It's **foggy** in Sydney and it's **snowing** / it's **snowy** in Moscow.

It's **raining** in Barcelona but **the sun is shining** in Granada.

It's a lovely day.

It's a horrible day, isn't it!

What's the weather like in your country in **June**?

It's usually warm and sunny.

### Error warning

We say It's windy / cloudy / foggy / sunny [NOT It's winding / clouding / fogging / sunning].





### Tip




Watch the weather forecast in English on TV or online as often as you can.

# Exercises








**26.1** Match the words and the symbols.

1 snow    2 sun    3 rain    4 fog    5 lightning    6 wind    7 cloud

a     b     c     d 

e     f     g 

**26.2** Look at the chart. Write sentences about the cities in the chart.

	Hanoi	1 It is <u>sunny</u> in Hanoi.
	Hong Kong	2 It is <u>raining</u> in Hong Kong.
	La Paz	3 It is .....
	Paris	4 It .....
	Tashkent	5 .....
	Seoul	6 .....
	Washington	7 .....

**26.3** Complete these sentences with a word from the opposite page.

- The sun shone..... every day last month.
- When it ....., I take my umbrella.
- What's the ..... like in your country in January?
- When it ....., we can go skiing.
- You see ..... before you hear thunder.
- It is 24 ..... here today.
- It is dangerous to be in a small boat at sea in a .....
- It is very ..... in Siberia in winter.

**26.4** Are these sentences true about the weather in your country? If not, correct them.

- It often snows in December. *It sometimes snows in December.*
- It is usually 40 degrees in summer and minus 20 degrees in winter.
- There are thunderstorms every day in August.
- It is very wet in spring.
- We never have hurricanes.
- Summer is usually hot and dry.

**26.5** What do you like to do or not like to do in these types of weather?

- 1 fog    I don't like to drive.    3 a rainy day    5 a windy day  
2 sunny weather    4 snow

## A Places in the town

Train station / railway station – you can get a train here.

Bus station – you can get a bus here.

Shops – you can buy things here. (See Unit 18: Shops and shopping.)

Shopping centre – area of town with a lot of shops.

Tourist information office – tourists can get information here.

Museum – you can see interesting old things here.

Bank – you can change money here or get money from a cash machine.

Post office – you can post letters and parcels here.

Library /'laɪbrəri/ – you can read books and newspapers here.

Town hall – local government officers work here.

Car park – you can park your car here.

Pedestrian area /'eəriə/ – you can only walk here, you can't come here by car.

## B Notices in towns



## C Asking for and giving directions

A: Where is the bus station?

B: Go left here and it's at the end of the road.

A: How do I get to Market Street?

B: Take the first right and then the second left.

A: Is there a shopping centre near here?

B: Yes, turn right here. The entrance is on Market Street on the left.

A: Can I park here?

B: No, but there's a car park on Park Street.

A: Excuse me, I'm looking for the museum.

B: It's on Bridge Road. Take the number 31 bus and get off at the second stop.



A: Can you tell me the way to the nearest bank, please? I need a cash machine.

B: No problem. Go left here and there's one on the other side of the road.

# Exercises

## 27.1 Answer the questions.

- 1 Where can I get a bus to London? *at the bus station*
- 2 Where can I get information about hotels?
- 3 Where can I change money?
- 4 Where can I park my car?
- 5 Where can I see old and interesting things?
- 6 Where can I get a train?
- 7 Where can I go to a lot of different shops?
- 8 Where can I read today's newspaper? (I don't want to buy it.)

## 27.2 Which notice from B opposite will help you?

- 1 The cash machine doesn't give you any money. *Out of order*
- 2 You are in the shopping centre and you want to leave.
- 3 You want to sit in a place where there are no cigarettes.
- 4 You want to know if people can go on the grass.
- 5 You want to go into the museum.

## 27.3 Complete these sentences.

- 1 Turn right at the *end*..... of the road.
- 2 The bus ..... is over there ..... the left.
- 3 For the Town Hall ..... the number 14 bus.
- 4 ..... is a post office on the other ..... of the road.
- 5 You can find a cash ..... at the bank in High Street.
- 6 We can get a map of the town at the tourist ..... office.
- 7 Can you tell me the ..... to the railway ....., please?
- 8 ..... me. I'm looking ..... a car park.

## 27.4 What words are these?

- |                   |               |                |             |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1 sumuem          | <i>museum</i> | 6 dtaeepsrin   | <i>raae</i> |
| 2 nowt hlal       |               | 7 scah enicmah |             |
| 3 brilyra         |               | 8 tsop ffcoie  |             |
| 4 rac prak        |               | 9 phoss        |             |
| 5 ywrlaai nttoisa |               | 10 sub post    |             |

## 27.5 Look at the map in C opposite. How do you get from the tourist information office to the shopping centre? Write directions.

## 27.6 Does your town have these places? Where are they? Write sentences.

- |                     |  |                 |
|---------------------|--|-----------------|
| 1 a train station   | <i>There's a train station. It's at the end of Station Road.</i> |                 |
| 2 a bus station     | 5 a town hall  | 8 a museum      |
| 3 a shopping centre | 6 a pedestrian area  | 9 a post office |
| 4 a library         | 7 a tourist information office                                   |                 |

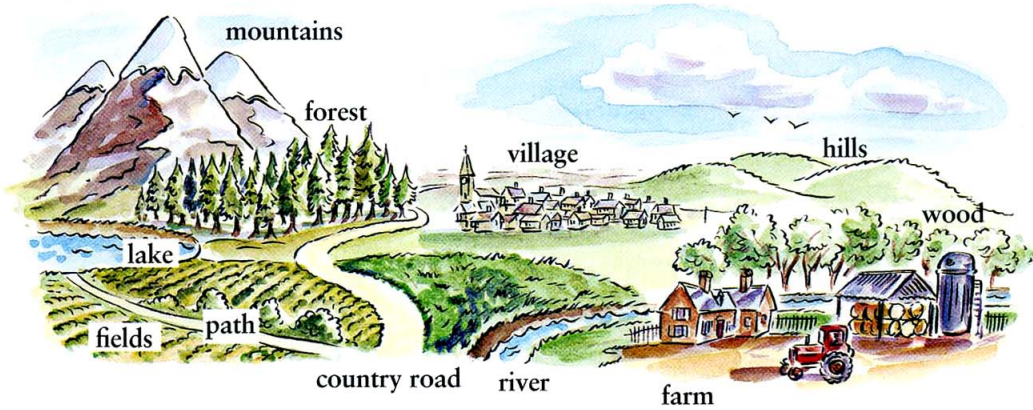
### Tip

Keep a notebook in your pocket. Many towns in different countries have notices in English to help tourists. Write down any English words and expressions that you see in your town.

# 28 In the countryside

The **countryside** and the **country** both mean 'not the city'. **Country** can also mean a nation (e.g. France, China).

## A Things we can see in the countryside



## B Living and working in the countryside

In the countryside, people usually live in a **small town** (e.g. 6,000 people) or **village** /vɪlɪdʒ/ (e.g. 700 people).

A **farmer** lives on a **farm** and works in the fields.

My friend lives in a **cottage**. /'kɒtɪdʒ/ [small house in a village or the countryside]

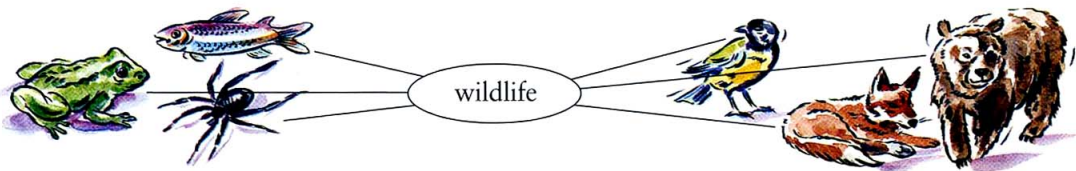
## C Nature /'neɪtʃə/ and conservation /kɒnsə'veɪʃn/

**Nature** means 'everything in the natural world'. (= animals, birds, plants, etc.)

### Error warning

I love nature [NOT I love the nature]. I like walking in the countryside [NOT I like walking in the nature]. 'Nature' is not a place.

There is wonderful **wildlife** in the north of the country. [animals, birds, fish and insects]



Near the village there is a **conservation area**. [place where wildlife and nature are protected]

In the south of the country, there is a **national park**. [very big national conservation area]

## D Things to do in the countryside

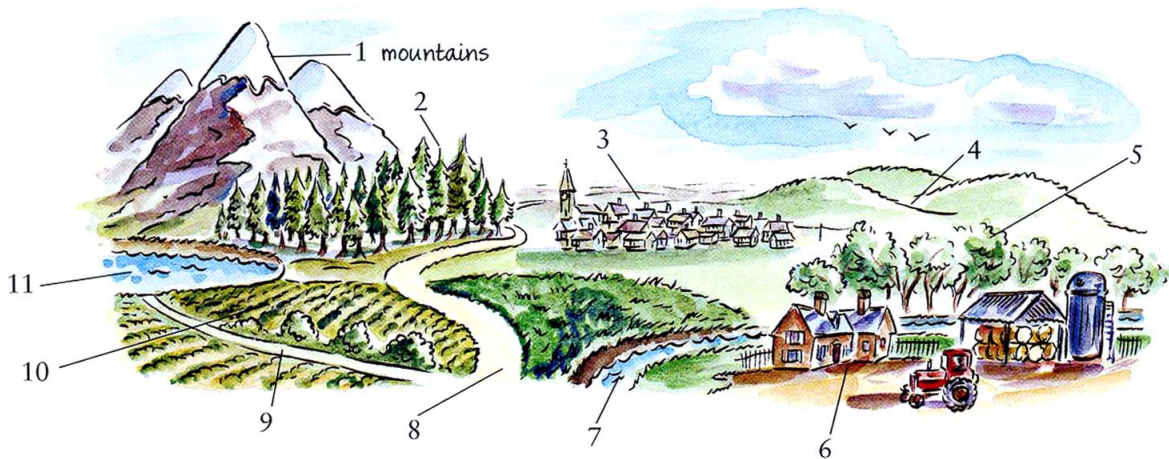
You can take food and drink and have a **picnic**.

You can go **walking** / **skiing** in the mountains.



# Exercises

**28.1** Cover the opposite page. How many names of things in the countryside can you remember?



**28.2** Fill the gaps in these sentences.

- 1 My brother is a farmer. He lives on a *farm*.....
- 2 It's not a big house; it's just a .....
- 3 The farm is near a ..... which has 800 people.
- 4 Twenty kilometres from the village there is a small ..... . It has 9,000 people.

**28.3** Match the beginning of the sentences on the left with the ends of the sentences on the right.

- |                                  |   |                                  |
|----------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 1 We went swimming               | — | sitting by the river.            |
| 2 We went walking                |   | in the national park.            |
| 3 We went skiing                 |   | in the lake. The water was warm. |
| 4 We saw some wonderful wildlife |   | along a five-kilometre path.     |
| 5 We had a picnic                |   | down the mountain.               |

**28.4** Put *the* in the sentences if necessary.

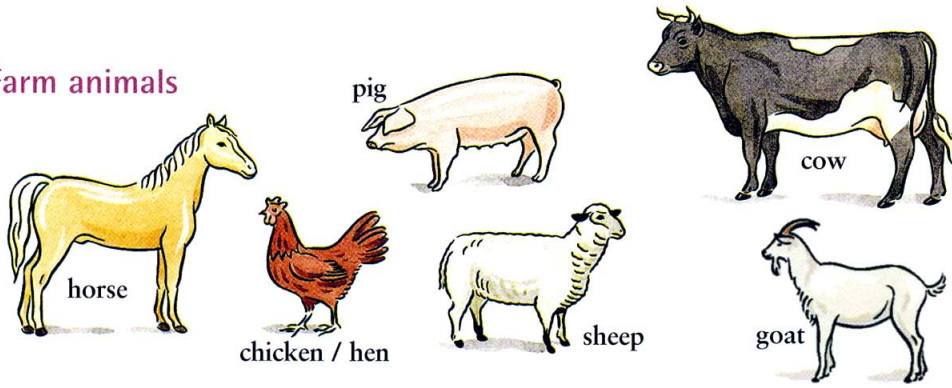
- 1 My parents live in *the*..... countryside.
- 2 He loves ..... nature.
- 3 She wants to live in ..... country.
- 4 They are interested in ..... wildlife.

**28.5** Describe the typical countryside where you come from. Write eight sentences about it. Use these questions to help you.

- 1 Are there any woods or forests? *There are some big forests.*
- 2 Are there any hills or mountains?
- 3 Are there any lakes or rivers?
- 4 Are there many villages or small towns?
- 5 Are there farms?
- 6 Are there paths where you can walk?
- 7 Can you go skiing?
- 8 Can you see wildlife?

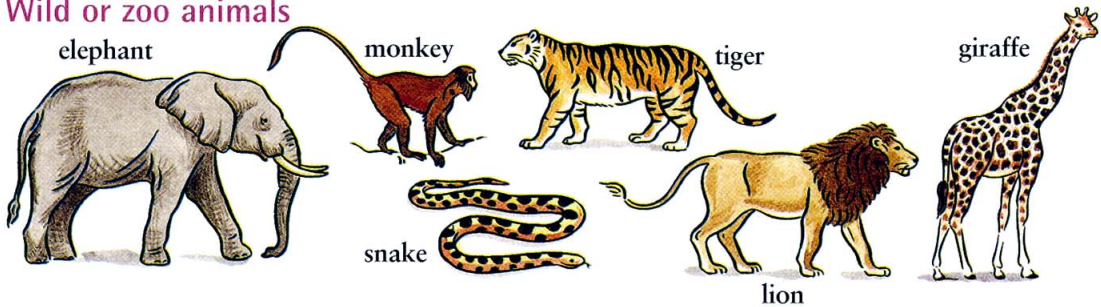


## A Farm animals



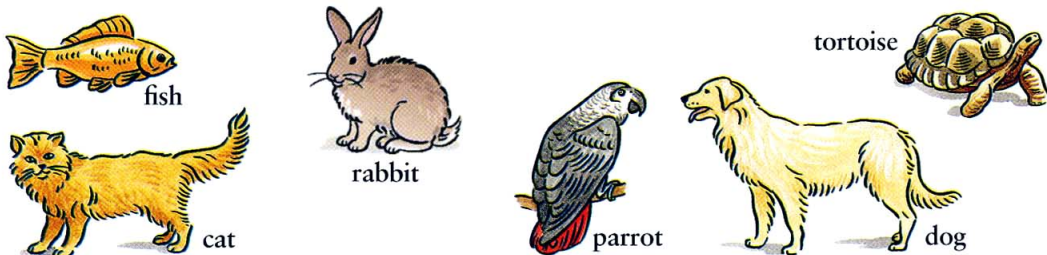
animal	produce	baby
horse	hair, meat	foal
cow	milk, leather, meat (beef)	calf
sheep	wool, meat (lamb)	lamb
pig	meat (pork, bacon, ham)	piglet
chicken / hen	eggs, meat (chicken)	chick
goat	milk, goatskin, meat	kid

## B Wild or zoo animals



## C Pets

These animals are often pets.



A parrot is a bird.

## D Expressions

Take your dog for a walk every day.

You must feed your animals and give them water every day.

Do you have any pets?

# Exercises

## 29.1 Complete these sentences.

- 1 A *tortoise*..... goes to sleep in winter.
- 2 A ..... has a very long neck.
- 3 ..... and ..... are birds.
- 4 ..... and ..... are large cats.
- 5 You can ride a ..... and an .....
- 6 ..... swim and ..... fly.
- 7 ..... are farm birds.
- 8 ..... are very good at hopping and jumping.
- 9 Don't forget to ..... the cat and to ..... it some water.
- 10 I ..... my dog for a walk every day before school.

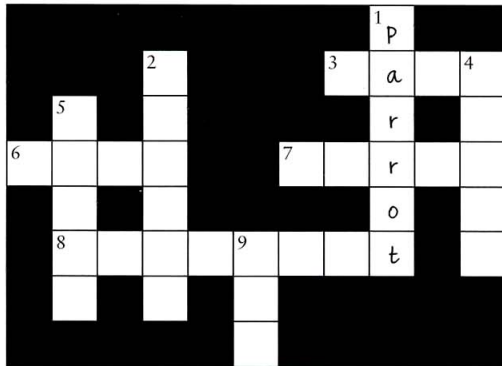
## 29.2 Match the animal with its meat and with its young animal.

<i>animal</i>	<i>meat</i>	<i>young</i>
goat	lamb	calf
sheep	chicken	piglet
cow	pork	lamb
hen	beef	kid
pig	goat	chick

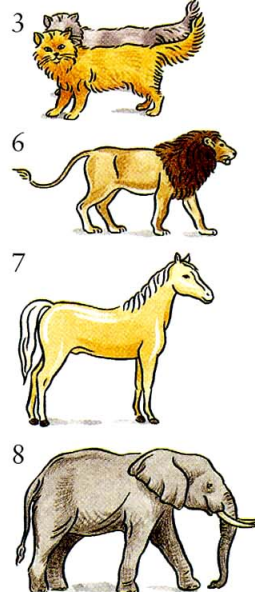
## 29.3 Look at the animals opposite. Find three animals which:

- 1 eat meat. lions, .....
- 2 give us things that we wear. ....
- 3 produce their babies in eggs. ....
- 4 we can eat. ....

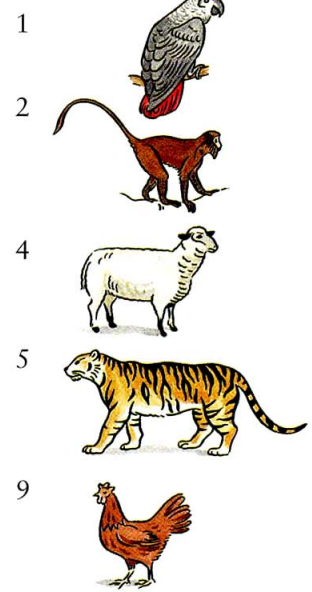
## 29.4 Look at the pictures and complete the crossword.



### Across



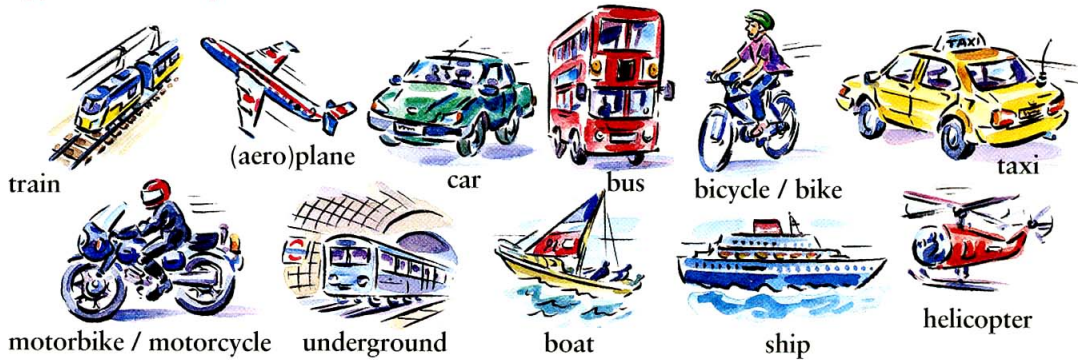
### Down



## 29.5 There are 18 different animals in the pictures on the opposite page. Close the book. How many of these animals can you remember?

# 30 Travelling

## A Types of transport



## B Useful travel words



Can I have a **single** / **return** (ticket) to Barcelona, please?  
(single = Madrid to Barcelona; return = Madrid to Barcelona and back to Madrid)

I'd like to **book** / **reserve a seat in advance**. [to make sure you have a seat]

### Error warning

Was the **journey** long? [NOT Was the ~~travel~~ long?]

## C By train

The train **arriving** at platform 3 is the 16:50 train to Paris.

The Edinburgh train **departs** / **leaves from** platform 6. (*departs* is formal)

Is there a **restaurant car** on this train?

A: Do I have to **change trains** for Toulouse? [get off one train and get onto another]

B: No, it's a **direct** train.

## D By plane

You have to **check in** two hours before the plane **takes off**. [leaves the ground]

**Online check-in** is also possible. / You can **check in online**.

Give your **boarding card** to the **flight attendant** when you get on the plane.

Have a good **flight**.

The plane **lands** in New York at 14:30.

After landing you have to **go through customs**.

### Error warning

I went **through customs** but nobody checked my **passport** [NOT ~~controlled~~ my passport].

## E By car

We **hired** a car for a week. We had to **fill it up** with petrol.

Can I give you a **lift**? I'm going into town.

(See Unit 17: Holidays and Unit 47: Moving for more useful words about travelling.)

# Exercises

**30.1** Match the words on the left with their definitions on the right.

- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| 1 land           | a a place to eat on a train                                    |
| 2 direct         | b bags and suitcases   |
| 3 restaurant car | c it says when trains depart and arrive                        |
| 4 ship           | d you do not have to change to a different plane / train / bus |
| 5 timetable      | e planes do this at airports                                   |
| 6 platform       | f it travels on water, e.g. the <i>Titanic</i>                 |
| 7 luggage        | g where you stand when you are waiting for a train             |

**30.2** Are these sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences.

- 1 A single ticket takes you to a place and back again. *False. A return ticket takes you to a place and back again.*
- 2 At customs, people check what you bring into the country.
- 3 Planes land at the beginning of a journey.
- 4 You need a boarding card to get off a plane.
- 5 Hiring a car is the same as buying a car.
- 6 If you give someone a lift they travel in your car.

**30.3** Here are directions from the airport to John's house.

When you arrive at the airport, take a number 10 bus to the station. Then take a train to Bigtown. The journey takes half an hour and you get off the train at the second stop. Take a taxi from the station to John's house.

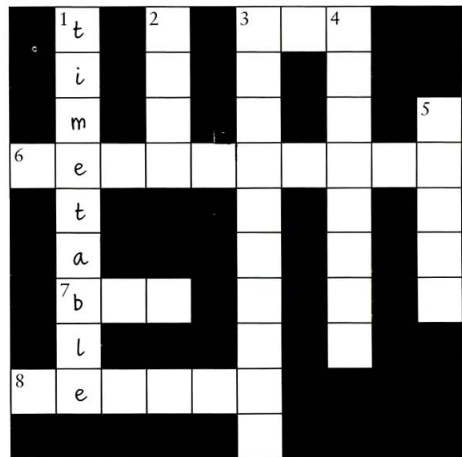
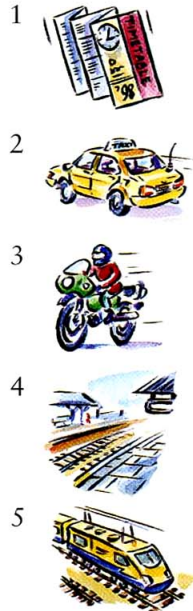
Now write directions from the train station to your house.

**30.4** Look at the pictures and complete the crossword.

Across



Down



## Follow-up



Make cards to test yourself. Write the word on one side of the card and a picture (or a definition or translation) on the other side. Look at the pictures (or definitions or translations). Can you remember the English words?

## A Special days

festival	date	what people do
Christmas	25th December	send Christmas cards give presents spend time with their families decorate a <b>Christmas tree</b> eat a lot
New Year's Eve / Hogmanay (Scotland)	31st December	sing and dance toast the New Year
New Year's Day	1st January	a <b>bank holiday</b> [day when most organisations are closed]
Valentine's Day	14th February	send cards to boyfriend / girlfriend / husband / wife
Easter	dates vary	give children <b>Easter eggs</b> [chocolate eggs]
Halloween	31st October	children dress up children knock at doors and ask for sweets
Bonfire Night	5th November	have a <b>bonfire</b> and fireworks



## B Food

Traditional UK food is fish and chips  and roast beef and roast potatoes [cooked in the oven] with Yorkshire pudding. [dish made of flour, milk and eggs] 

Chicken tikka masala [a kind of curry] comes from India, but is very popular in the UK. 

## C Education

type of school	what it is
nursery school	for children aged 2–4
primary school	for children aged 5–11
secondary school	for children aged 12–18
state school	parents don't pay for children to go here
private school	parents pay for children to go here

## D Politics

The UK has a royal family, with a **king** or a **queen**.

Political decisions are made at the **Houses of Parliament**.

The **Prime Minister** is the political leader of the UK.



# Exercises

## 31.1 Which festivals do these pictures show?



1 Halloween .....



3 .....



5 .....



2 .....



4 .....



6 .....

## 31.2 Look at the pictures. Find 10 more words connected with food in the puzzle.



C	H	I	C	K	E	N	F	D	K	N
R	Y	O	R	K	S	H	I	R	E	P
O	C	V	O	M	T	R	S	M	V	U
A	Q	E	W	A	A	T	H	X	L	D
S	M	V	C	S	H	G	E	Q	L	D
T	P	O	T	A	T	O	E	S	C	I
D	F	G	B	L	B	K	U	V	U	N
X	Z	O	E	A	P	I	V	Z	R	G
A	N	D	E	C	H	I	P	S	R	B
C	W	Q	F	T	I	K	K	A	Y	J

## 31.3 Answer these questions about traditional UK food.

- 1 What do British people traditionally eat with fish? *chips*
- 2 Where does chicken tikka masala come from?
- 3 What is chicken tikka masala a kind of?
- 4 Do British people eat Yorkshire pudding after their main course?
- 5 In or on which part of the cooker do you make roast beef and roast potatoes?

## 31.4 Which kind of school do these British children go to?

- 1 Meena is seven. Her parents pay for her to go to school. *a private primary school*
- 2 Alex is 14. His school is free.
- 3 Tim and Masha are three.
- 4 Mehmet is ten. His parents don't pay for him to go to school.
- 5 Nick is 16. His parents pay for him to go to school.

## 31.5 Answer these questions about politics in the UK.

- 1 Who is Prime Minister at the moment?
- 2 Where does the Prime Minister work?
- 3 Who is head of the royal family at the moment?

### Tip

Learn about UK life by using the BBC Learning English website which has up-to-date articles and news stories: <http://www.bbc.co.uk/worldservice/learningenglish/>

# 32 Crime

## A Crimes and criminals



<i>crime</i>	robbery	murder /'mɜːdə/	burglary /'bɜːgləri/	mugging [attacking a person in a public place and stealing their money]
<i>person</i>	a robber	a murderer	a burglar	a mugger
<i>verb</i>	to rob somebody or a place (e.g. a bank)	to murder somebody	to break into a house / flat (break / broke / broken)	to mug somebody



<i>crime</i>	car theft	drug dealing	terrorism	shoplifting
<i>person</i>	a car thief /θiːf/	a drug dealer	a terrorist	a shoplifter
<i>verb</i>	to steal a car (steal / stole / stolen)	to sell drugs (sell / sold / sold)	to attack somebody or a place	to steal things from a shop

There was a **burglary** at the school last night.

John West **murdered** his wife.

There are a lot of **muggings** in the city centre.

The bank was **robbed** yesterday. My sister was **robbed** last week.

### Error warning

A thief steals something (steal / stole / stolen).  
Somebody stole my bicycle. [NOT Somebody ~~robbed~~ my bicycle.]

I was robbed last night. [NOT I was ~~stolen~~.]

## B The law /lɔː/

A student was **arrested** for shoplifting this morning.

The **police** came to the school and spoke to his teacher.

The student has to go to **court** next week.

If he is **guilty** he will have to pay a **fine**. /'gɪlti/

If he is **innocent** he can go home. /'ɪnəsənt/

I don't think he will go to **prison**.

## C Other crime problems

Some **vandals** broke the windows in the telephone box.

[A vandal breaks and smashes things.]

We have a lot of **vandalism** in my town.

A lot of people **take drugs** nowadays.

Is football **hooliganism** a problem in your country? /'huːlɪgənɪzəm/

[A football **hooligan** is a person who goes to a football match and makes trouble.]

# Exercises

## 32.1 What do we call someone ...

- 1 who steals cars? *a car thief*
- 2 who kills someone?
- 3 who steals things from shops?
- 4 who robs people's houses and flats?
- 5 who attacks someone in the street and steals their money?
- 6 who sells illegal drugs?

## 32.2 Fill the gaps in these sentences.

- 1 There were a lot of football *hooligans*..... near the stadium.
- 2 The police officer arr..... her for shoplifting.
- 3 Some van..... destroyed all the flowers in the park.
- 4 He had to pay a fi..... of £50 for parking his car in the wrong place.
- 5 There are a lot of bur..... in this part of the city, so always close the windows.
- 6 The police made a mistake; she was inn..... . She did not steal the money.
- 7 A group of terr..... have attacked the airport.
- 8 He murdered his wife. He was in pr..... for 20 years.

## 32.3 True or false?

- 1 A burglar goes into someone's house and steals things. *True*
- 2 Vandals take people's money.
- 3 A murderer kills someone.
- 4 A car thief is someone who drives very badly or dangerously.
- 5 If you are guilty it means you are the person who did the crime.

## 32.4 Choose the right word to complete each sentence.

- 1 My brother was *robbed* / *stolen* yesterday.
- 2 Someone *robbed* / *stole* my bike last night.
- 3 My local bank has been *robbed* / *stolen*.
- 4 Who has *robbed* / *stolen* my pen?
- 5 Someone *robbed* / *stole* our TV when we were on holiday.
- 6 Where were you when your keys were *robbed* / *stolen*?

### Follow-up

Give your opinion. What do you think should happen to these people?

- 1 A man murdered his wife and three children. He *should go to prison for 30 years.*
- 2 A student with no money stole a book from a bookshop.
- 3 A woman sold some drugs to a teenager.
- 4 Some terrorists attacked a bus and killed five people.
- 5 A woman parked her car and blocked the traffic.
- 6 A teenager damaged some trees in the park.



# 33 The media

## A Radio and TV programmes

The news is on TV at 6 o'clock every night. [important things that happen]

Do you watch **soaps / soap operas**? *Home and Away* is my favourite. [Soaps are stories about people's lives. They are often on TV every day.]

I like **nature programmes** best. [programmes about animals, birds, etc.]

I watched a **documentary** last night about drugs and crime. [programme looking at a social problem or question]

In **talk shows**, people talk about themselves or discuss topics with an interviewer.

The children watch **cartoons** on Saturday mornings. (For example, Disney films with animals that talk. See Unit 22: Cinema.)

My brother likes watching **reality TV**. [programmes that film real people living their lives, not actors]

I always watch **sports programmes**.

## B Newspapers and magazines

In most countries there are **morning (news)papers** and **evening (news)papers**.

Every month, I buy a **magazine**.

My mother buys **women's magazines**.

I like **news magazines** like *Newsweek* and *Time*.

In most magazines and newspapers there are lots of **adverts / advertisements**. [something that tries to persuade people to buy something]

Other types of magazines: **sports magazines / computer magazines / teenage magazines**. (See Unit 23: Free time at home.)



## C People and the media

There was an **interview with** the US President on TV last night.

The **reporters** are outside Zelda Glitzberg's house. [people who go out and get the news stories where they happen]

My sister is a **journalist**; she writes for *The Oxford Times* newspaper. [person who writes articles]



## D Expressions

You can read newspapers or watch TV online.

What's your favourite TV programme?

What's on TV tonight?

Is it OK if I change the channel?



### Error warning

The news is on now. [NOT The news are on now.]

# Exercises

## 33.1 Fill the gaps in these sentences.

- 1 Ten million people watch this programme..... every week. It's very popular.
- 2 The news ..... on channel 3 at 9 o'clock every night.
- 3 There was a ..... about traffic problems in cities on TV last night.
- 4 I saw a ..... programme about birds in Antarctica.
- 5 My sister is 13; she reads a ..... magazine every week. She likes the stories about boys.
- 6 With my computer I can read the sports news .....
- 7 I'd like to watch the news now. Is it OK if I ..... the channel?
- 8 Did you see the ..... with the Prime Minister last night?

## 33.2 Match the left-hand column with the type of programme on the right.

- |   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| 1 Talking about family problems                                       | a International news   |
| 2 Film of elephants in Africa   | b Sports programme     |
| 3 Football cup final  | c Reality TV programme |
| 4 Reports from all over the world                                     | d Soap (opera)         |
| 5 Maria decides not to marry Philip                                   | e Nature programme     |
| 6 Ten people in a house – they cannot leave or talk to anyone outside | f Talk show            |

## 33.3 What do you call ...

- 1 a person who goes out and gets stories for newspapers? *a reporter*
- 2 a person who writes articles in newspapers and magazines?
- 3 a newspaper you can buy every day after about 5 pm?
- 4 a programme with stories made from lots of pictures?
- 5 a programme on TV about animals, birds, etc?
- 6 something in a magazine or on TV that tries to sell something?
- 7 something like CNN or Sky Sports?
- 8 a meeting when a reporter asks a person questions for TV or a newspaper?

## 33.4 Answer these questions for yourself.

- 1 Do you read a morning or an evening newspaper?
- 2 What kinds of magazine do you read?
- 3 What will you watch on TV tonight?
- 4 What is your favourite TV channel?
- 5 How many hours of TV do you watch every day?
- 6 What are your favourite kinds of TV programmes?
- 7 Do you ever watch TV online?
- 8 Do you like watching adverts on TV?

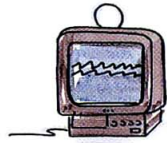
### Follow-up

Go to <http://www.bbc.co.uk/> Listen to radio programmes and download podcasts that interest you.

# 34 Problems at home and work

## A At home

The TV isn't working. Can you repair it?



The washing machine is broken. We need to mend it.



The plants are dying. Did you forget to water them?



The room is untidy. We must tidy it.



I've lost my keys. Will you help me look for them?



You've cut your finger. You should put on a plaster.

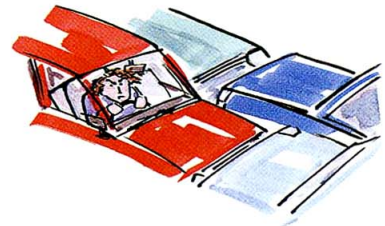


You've had a row /rau/ with a friend. Will you apologise? [say 'I'm sorry']

## B At work

Carla had a bad day at work yesterday. She was late for work.

She had too much work to do.



Her colleague was in a bad mood.



Her computer crashed.



The photocopier was out of order.



The coffee machine wasn't working.



### Tip

When you need to make a list of things to do, make it in English, e.g.

Mend my bike    Water the plants  
Tidy my desk

# Exercises

## 34.1 Look at the pictures. What is the problem?



- 1 The coffee machine isn't working.
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....
- 6 .....
- 7 .....
- 8 .....

## 34.2 Write down three nouns that can go with these words:

- 1 broken window / cup / glass
- 2 cut .....
- 3 untidy .....
- 4 late for .....
- 5 a ..... that isn't working
- 6 too much .....

## 34.3 Have you ever had these problems? Number each one 0-3 (0 = never, 1 = once or twice, 2 = quite often, 3 = frequently).

- |                                       |   |                            |
|---------------------------------------|---|----------------------------|
| 1 a TV that doesn't work              | 2 | 7 a broken washing machine |
| 2 dying plants                        |   | 8 an untidy bedroom        |
| 3 a cut finger                        |   | 9 a row with a friend      |
| 4 being late for work or school       |   | 10 your computer crashes   |
| 5 a colleague or friend in a bad mood |   | 11 lost keys               |
| 6 a coffee machine that isn't working |   | 12 too much work           |

## 34.4 Look at Carla's problems in B. What could she do?

She was late for work - get a new alarm clock.

## 34.5 Can you think of four problems that you or a friend have had recently? Write them down in English. Use a dictionary to help you.

.....  
 .....

# 35 Global problems

## A Natural disasters

There was a **hurricane** / **snowstorm** / **forest fire** there last year.

**hurricane** [a very strong wind]

**snowstorm** [a lot of snow and wind at the same time]

**forest fire** [when it is very dry and trees catch fire]



San Francisco has had a lot of **earthquakes**. [when the earth moves]

There were serious **floods** in the north yesterday. [too much water]

The river often **floods** after heavy rain. [water goes over the river banks]

## B Man-made problems

There are too many people in some places. Cities are too **crowded**.

Many people are:

**poor** [they do not have enough money]

**hungry** [they do not have enough food]

**homeless** [they do not have a place to live]

**unemployed** [they do not have a job]

There is a lot of **pollution** in many places. [when the air, water or earth is dirty and bad for people, plants and animals]

The river is **polluted** and a lot of fish have died.

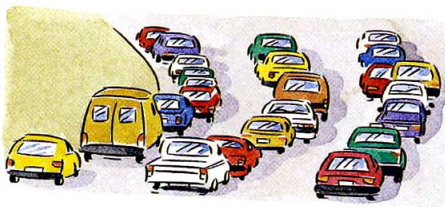
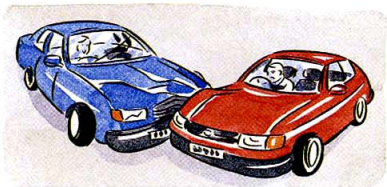
The **air pollution** is very bad today.

The American **War of Independence** started in 1775 and ended in 1783. [fighting between two or more countries or nationalities] It lasted for eight years.

The teachers are **on strike** today. [when people refuse to work because, for example, they want more money]

He had a **car crash** on the way to work.

The **traffic jams** in the city are terrible in the **rush hour**. [times when everyone is going to work]



# Exercises

## 35.1 What problems can you see in the pictures?



1 strike .....



4 .....



7 .....



2 .....



5 .....



8 .....



3 .....



6 .....



9 .....

## 35.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |            |           |
|------------|-----------|
| 1 air      | fire      |
| 2 traffic  | people    |
| 3 rush     | pollution |
| 4 forest   | quake     |
| 5 crowded  | jam       |
| 6 homeless | hour      |
| 7 car      | cities    |
| 8 earth    | crash     |

## 35.3 Find the words that match these definitions.

- |  |             |  |
|--|-------------|--|
| 1 a very strong wind                                   | a hurricane | 5 without work                               |
| 2 so many cars on the road that they can't easily move |             | 6 the time of day when there is most traffic |
| 3 a street with a large number of people               |             | 7 without enough to eat                      |
| 4 when two cars hit one another                        |             | 8 when a lot of trees burn                   |

## 35.4 Look at the opposite page and find ...

- |  |                        |
|--|------------------------|
| 1 two problems on the roads.                     | traffic jam, car crash |
| 2 two things that pollute the air.               | .....                  |
| 3 two problems that can be political.            | .....                  |
| 4 three problems that are caused by the weather. | .....                  |
| 5 four adjectives that can describe people.      | .....                  |

## 35.5 Fill the gaps with a word from the opposite page.

- Cars make air pollution ..... worse in towns.
- Their wages were very low so the workers went on .....
- My great-grandfather died in the First World .....
- Jack had a ..... last year but fortunately no one was hurt.
- Japan often has ..... and Siberia often has .....
- When people are ..... they sometimes sleep on the streets.
- I hate driving in the city in the .....
- The water is so ..... that people cannot drink it.

### Tip

Try to listen to or watch the news in English every day. Make a note of new words about global problems that you find.

# 36 Have / had / had

## A What can you have?

You can ...

have breakfast lunch dinner a meal

have a party a meeting a game (of football, etc.)

have a lesson an exam homework

have a cup of tea / coffee a drink an ice cream some cheese

have a shower /'ʃaʊə/ a bath a swim



## B Expressions with have

Is that your camera? Can I have a look? [look at it]

Is that your bicycle? Can I have a go? [ride it]

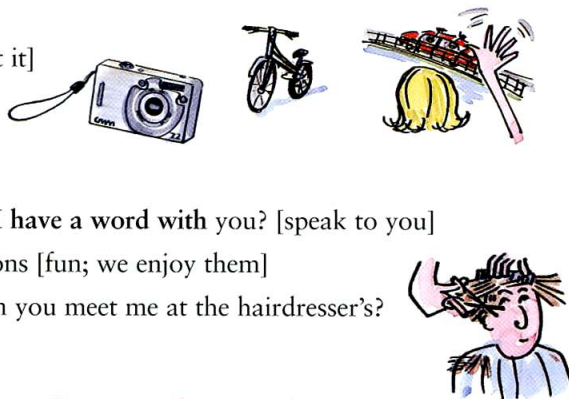
Goodbye! Have a good journey! [somebody is going away]

Do you have a moment? [have some time] Can I have a word with you? [speak to you]

We always have a good time in our English lessons [fun; we enjoy them]

I'm going to have my hair cut. See you later. Can you meet me at the hairdresser's?

I want to learn to ski but I don't have the time.



## C Have + got (speaking / informal) = have (writing / formal)

I've got three sisters. Have you got any brothers and sisters?

My house is big. It's got five bedrooms and three bathrooms.

We've got ten minutes before the train goes.

Have you got a pen?

(in a shop) A: Do you sell postcards? B: Yes, but we haven't got any at the moment.

I've got a problem. Can I have a word with you?

I've got a cold / a headache. /'hedetk/

## D Have got to (speaking / informal) = have to (writing / formal)

We use have (got) to when the situation means you are obliged to do something.

The museum's not free. You have to / you've got to pay \$10 to go in.

All students have to do an exam.

My sister needs the car, so I've got to walk to school every day this week.

### Error warning

In the past, we use had to, without 'got'. When I was a student, I had to write an essay every week [NOT I had got to write an essay].

### Tip

Group expressions together which belong to the same topic, for example, have + words for meals (breakfast, lunch, dinner), have + 'study' words (an exam, a test, a lesson, a class), etc.

# Exercises

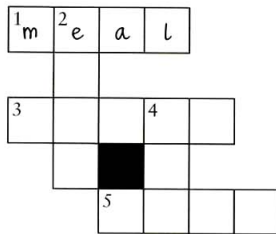
## 36.1 Fill the gaps in the sentences. Use words from A and B opposite.

- 1 I always have *coffee*..... in the morning.
- 2 I have a tennis ..... every Saturday morning. My teacher is excellent.
- 3 Do you want to have a game of ..... ?
- 4 Jane's having a ..... on Saturday. Are you going?
- 5 Do you want to have a ..... ? The bathroom's just here.
- 6 I have an ..... tomorrow, so I have to study tonight.
- 7 We must have a ..... to talk about these problems.
- 8 I'm going to the cafeteria to have a ..... . Do you want to come?
- 9 The hotel has a swimming pool, so we can have a ..... every day.
- 10 We can have ..... before the film, or we can eat after it.

## 36.2 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Please phone Grandma when you have ~~the~~ moment. a
- 2 Nadia has gone to the hairdresser's to have cut her hair.
- 3 That computer game looks great. Can I have a going?
- 4 I want to have some words with my teacher after the lesson.
- 5 Mum didn't have the times to go to the shop today.
- 6 They don't have got any cake in the café today.

## 36.3 Complete the crossword.



### Across

- 1 You have it in a restaurant.
- 3 People often have one on their birthday.
- 5 Do you want to have a ..... of tennis?

### Down

- 2 You have it at school or university.
- 4 If you don't like coffee, you can have .....

## 36.4 What do you say?

- 1 (*someone is thirsty*) Why don't you have a *drink*..... ?
- 2 (*someone is going away*) Bye! Have a ..... !
- 3 (*someone sneezes [Atishoo!] and has a red nose*) Oh! Have you got a ..... ?
- 4 (*someone has a new camera*) Is that new? Can I have a ..... ?

## 36.5 Answer the questions.

- 1 Have you got any brothers or sisters?
- 2 What time do you have English lessons?
- 3 What do you have for lunch?
- 4 Do you have to go to lessons every day?
- 5 How many pens have you got with you now?
- 6 Do you always have a good time in your English classes?



## A Go

Go means to move from one place to another.

I go to work by bike. My brother goes by car.

We went to Paris last summer.

Is this train going to Granada?



Shall we go to the swimming pool today?

Where does this road go?



## B Go + prepositions

Kim went in(to) his room and shut the door.



Yuko went out of the house and into the garden.



Arthur was tired. He went up the stairs slowly.



The phone was ringing. She went down the stairs quickly.



## C Future plans

Be going to is often used to talk about future plans.

Jan is going to study maths at university.

We're going to visit my aunt in New York soon.

I'm going to learn five new words every day.

## D Expressions Go + -ing for activities

Go is often used with -ing for different activities.



I hate going shopping.



I usually go swimming in the morning.



Let's go dancing.



Do you like going sightseeing when you are on holiday?



Hans goes skiing every winter.



Bob is going fishing today.

## Error warning

Let's go swimming and then go shopping. [NOT Let's go to / for swimming and then go to / for shopping.]

I go there every week. I don't want to go anywhere / somewhere else. [NOT I go to there every week. I don't want to go to anywhere / somewhere else.]

I must go home at 10 o'clock. [NOT I must go to / at home at 10 o'clock.]

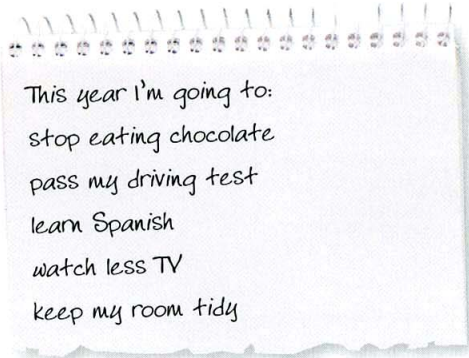
# Exercises

**37.1** Where are these people going? Follow the lines.



- 1 Pablo is going to the zoo.
- 2 The Sharps .....
- 3 Lili and Karl .....
- 4 Imran .....
- 5 Jan .....

**37.2** Write about Alison's New Year Resolutions.



- 1 This year Alison is going to stop eating chocolate.
- 2 This year .....
- 3 This year .....
- 4 This year .....
- 5 This year .....

**37.3** Look at the activities in D opposite. Which do you do on holiday? Write sentences.

I usually go shopping on holiday.

**37.4** Where do trains, buses and roads go to from your town?

From Cambridge, trains go to London and to Norwich.

**37.5** Are these sentences correct? If not, correct them.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 It's time to go at home now.<br>X It's time to go home now.           | 8 I go to swimming every Sunday morning. |
| 2 Mum is going for shopping this afternoon.                             | 9 We're going sightsee today.            |
| 3 I'm going to London by car tomorrow.                                  | 10 Jo went down to the top of the hill.  |
| 4 I love Paris. Did you go to there last year?                          | 11 Let's go to fish today.               |
| 5 Milos is going to home at 4 o'clock.                                  | 12 She went out off the shop.            |
| 6 We always go to the same café. Let's go to somewhere different today. | 13 Please go away. I'm tired.            |
| 7 Excuse me, please. Where does this bus go?                            | 14 Would you like to go to home now?     |

## Follow-up

Look in an English story book. Find five examples of *go*. Write them down in your vocabulary notebook.

## A Do as auxiliary

<i>questions</i>	Do you like tennis?	Did they like the film?
<i>short answers</i>	Yes, I do.	Yes, they did.
	So does Sinjit.	So did I.
<i>negatives</i>	He doesn't play well.	Jo didn't see it.

## B What are you doing?

Do as a general verb:

On Saturdays I usually **do** nothing. I just relax.



Don't do that, Tommy.



What are the people in the picture **doing**?

They're dancing.



## C What do you do?

A: What **do** you **do**? (= What is your job?)

B: I'm a student. / I'm a secretary.

A: What **does** your wife **do**? (= What's your wife's job?)

B: She's a doctor. / She's a teacher.

(See Unit 14: Jobs.)

## D Do + activity

do the housework

do the gardening

do the washing

do the washing-up

do your homework

do some exercises

do business with

do your best



A: Did you **do** the **washing** this morning?

B: No, I'm going to **do** it later.

Our company **does** a lot of **business with** the US.

The homework is very difficult – just **do** your best.

## Tip

Make a note of any expressions with **do** that you find when you are reading in English.

See Unit 39 for the contrast between *do* and *make*.

# Exercises

**38.1** Write questions and answers about the people in the picture.



- 1 (the boy) What is the boy doing? He's eating an ice cream.
- 2 (the girls) .....
- 3 (the dog) .....
- 4 (the man in the house) .....
- 5 (the woman) .....
- 6 (the man in the garden) .....

**38.2** Write questions and answers about the jobs of the people in the pictures.

1 Lee Atkins

2 Lara Brown

2 Sophie Hicks

4 Jo and Ted



- 1 What does Lee Atkins do? He's a teacher.
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....

**38.3** Write questions about what the people in Exercise 38.2 did this morning. Answer the questions using the correct form of the phrases in the box.

talk to five patients    ~~teach three lessons~~    write an essay    go to a meeting

- 1 What did Lee Atkins do? He taught three lessons.
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....

**38.4** Look at the *do* expressions in D. Write sentences using these activities.

I do a lot of housework but I never do the gardening.

**38.5** Correct the mistakes in this dialogue.

ANNA: Where did you ~~went~~ on your holidays? To London? go

PAVEL: No, we don't go to London this year. We went to Scotland.

ANNA: Do your grandmother lives in Scotland?

PAVEL: No, she don't but my uncle do.

# 39 Make / made / made

## A Make ...

Dad is making some coffee.



Mum is making dinner.



I'll make some tea / hot chocolate. /'tʃɒklət/

I make breakfast / lunch / dinner every day.

He's making a photocopy.



She's making a film / video.



## B It makes me (feel) ...

Going by train always makes me (feel) tired.

My friend called me stupid. It made me (feel) angry.

That film made me (feel) sad.



## C Expressions

You use **make** NOT **do** in these expressions:

I **made** a mistake in the exercise.

I want to **make** an appointment with the doctor. [fix a time to see him/her]

When I get up I **make** my bed.

The children are **making** a noise.

Yes, and they are **making** a mess in the living room!

I love your new dress – you **made** a good choice.

### Error warning

You do homework [NOT ~~make~~ homework]. You take or do an exam [NOT ~~make~~ an exam].  
You take a photo [NOT ~~make~~ a photo]. You do the washing [NOT ~~make~~ the washing].

# Exercises

## 39.1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of *make*.

- 1 I always make ..... a lot of mistakes when I speak English.
- 2 Our neighbours had a party last night. They ..... a lot of noise.
- 3 I am ..... dinner for my parents this evening.
- 4 What do you think, the silver car or the white one? We must ..... our choice today.
- 5 I ..... an appointment with the doctor for you. It's at 5 o'clock.
- 6 Craig is in the kitchen. He is ..... a cup of tea.

## 39.2 Complete the sentences with *make(s)* / *made me feel* + an adjective from the box.

sick   tired   ~~sad~~   happy   angry

- 1 That film about the war made me feel sad .....
- 2 Long lessons always .....
- 3 She was horrible to me; it .....
- 4 It's a lovely song. It .....
- 5 That meal was horrible. It .....

## 39.3 What are these people doing? Complete the sentences using *make*.



1 He's making a photocopy.....



3 The children are .....



5 The children are .....



2 She's .....



4 They're .....



6 The girl is .....

## 39.4 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

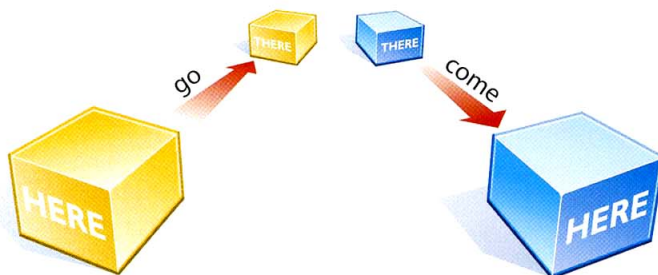
- 1 I have to make my homework. I have to do my homework.
- 2 Can I make a photo of you?
- 3 He's 25 but he never makes his own washing. He takes his dirty clothes to his mother's.
- 4 Are you making an exam tomorrow?
- 5 Have you made your homework yet?

### Follow-up

Make a page for expressions with *make* and *do* in your vocabulary notebook. Make two columns – one with the heading *make* and the other with the heading *do*. Write down all the *make* and *do* expressions you know in the appropriate columns. Add new expressions to the page as you meet them.

# 40 Come / came / come

Come and go are different:



## A Come in / out

We say 'Come in!' when someone knocks at the door of a room.

Then the person who knocked **comes into** the room.



**Come out (of)** is often the opposite of **come in (to)**.

A woman **came out of** the shop with two big bags. (I was in the street.)

You put your money in and the ticket **comes out of** the machine.



## B Come back and come home

**Come back** means 'return to this place here'.

She went away for three days. She **came back** yesterday. (She is here again.)

**Come back** is often used with **from**.

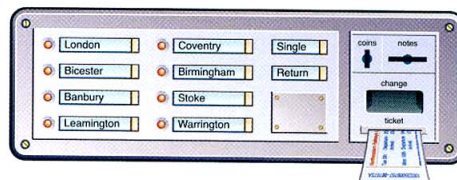
They **came back from** Italy yesterday.

**Come home** is similar; 'home' is 'here' for the person speaking.

MUM: What time did you **come home** last night?

ANNE: Oh, about 3 o'clock.

MUM: What! That's much too late!



## C Other important uses of come

A: What country do you **come from**?

B: I'm from Poland. / I **come from** Poland. / I'm Polish.

We're going clubbing tonight. Do you want to **come along**? [come with us]

**Come and see me** some time. [visit me]

### Error warning

I come from Poland [NOT I'm coming from Poland].

### Tip

Write down any prepositions you find with *come* every time you see them.

# Exercises

## 40.1 Fill the gaps in the sentences.

- 1 I put money in, but the ticket didn't come *out of*..... the machine.
- 2 A: I'm going to Thailand tomorrow.  
B: Oh! When are you coming ..... ?  
A: In two weeks.
- 3 The teacher came ..... the classroom and started the lesson.
- 4 A: Where do you come ..... ?  
B: I'm Spanish.
- 5 Come and ..... me at 5 o'clock; we can talk about it then.
- 6 The children come ..... school at 4 o'clock.

## 40.2 What do you think these people are saying? Use words from the box.

come from   ~~come in~~   come along   come here



1 *Come in!* .....



3 .....



2 .....



4 .....

## 40.3 Fill the gaps using *come in* in the correct form.

- 1 Did you *come*..... for your letters? They're on the table.
- 2 She ..... back yesterday.
- 3 He ..... here every Tuesday.
- 4 ..... you ..... to the party tonight?
- 5 Daljit ..... from a small town in India.

## 40.4 Answer these questions for yourself.

- 1 What time do you come home every day?
- 2 What country do you come from?
- 3 What do you do when you come into your classroom?

### Follow-up

Look up these verbs in a dictionary. Write down the meaning and one example for each verb. After a week, cover the verbs and examples, look at the meanings and see if you can remember the verbs.

Verb	Meaning	Example
come round	.....	.....
come across	.....	.....
come up	.....	.....



# 41 Take / took / taken

## A Take with time (it + take + person + time)

It takes Alan 20 minutes to get to work.

Alan's house → 20 minutes → Alan's office

It takes Miriam 45 minutes to get to work.

Miriam's flat → 45 minutes → Miriam's office

I go to school / university every day. It takes me 30 minutes.

I do homework every day. It took /tuk/ me two hours yesterday.

How long does it take to get to the station? Fifteen minutes in a taxi.

How long did it take you to learn the Greek alphabet? A week or two.



## B Take something with you

Are you going out? Take an umbrella. It's raining.

Are you going to the beach? Take some water with you.

Sorry, you can't take your camera into the museum.



## C Expressions

Can I take a photo / photograph here? /'fəʊtəʊ/ /'fəʊtəgræf/

A: Are you taking an English course? B: Yes.

A: Do you have to take an exam? B: Yes, at the end of the course.

I want to take some Japanese lessons.

How do you get to work? I take the bus.

In London you can take the underground to the London Eye.



We took a taxi from the airport to our hotel.

How does Nick get to work? He takes the train.



### Tip

Make a page in your notebook for *take* and put in new words that go with it when you see them (e.g. *take a picture, take a look at, take a chance*).

# Exercises

## 41.1 Fill the gaps for yourself.

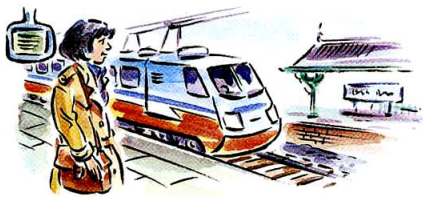
- 1 It takes ..... me ..... minutes to get to school / university / work.
- 2 It takes me ..... minutes to go from my house to the nearest railway station.
- 3 It takes me ..... minutes to get to my best friend's house.
- 4 ..... takes me ..... to do one unit of this book.

## 41.2 Complete the sentences using *take* and an expression from the box.

a course    some water    the train    ~~an exam~~

- 1 At the end of the course, you have to ..... take an exam.
- 2 You can fly from London to Paris or you can .....
- 3 You want to learn Russian? Why don't you .....
- 4 If you go out on a hot day, you need to .....

## 41.3 Look at the pictures. Answer the questions using *take*.



- 1 How does Lisa go to work?  
She takes the train.



- 3 How does Simon go to school?  
He .....



- 2 How can I get to the airport?  
You .....



- 4 How do Paulo and Anna get home every day?  
They .....

## 41.4 What do you take with you when ...

- 1 you want to take photographs? I take my camera.
- 2 it's raining?
- 3 you go to another country?
- 4 you go to your English lessons?
- 5 you need to text someone?



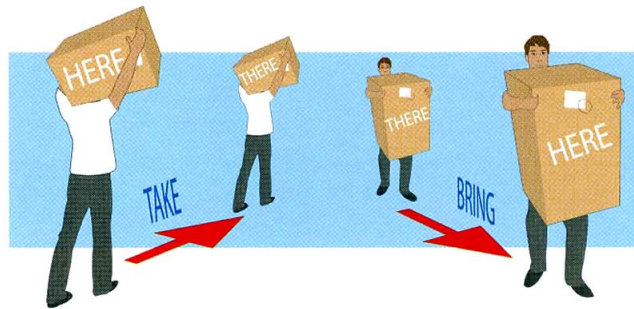
## 41.5 How long did it take you to do this unit?

# Bring / brought / brought

## A Bring and take

take (like go) = from *here* to *there*

bring (like come) = from *there* to *here*



Are you going to school? **Take** your books. (= from *here* to the school)

Are you going to the kitchen? Can you **bring** me a glass? (= from the kitchen to *here*)

Please **take** this form to the secretary. (= the secretary is *there*)



Come to my house tomorrow and **bring** your guitar. (= for me, my house is *here*)



## B Bring somebody something



A: I've **brought** /brɔ:t/ you some apples from my garden. B: Oh, thank you!



When she visits me, she always **brings** me flowers.

## C Bring something back

It's raining. You can take my umbrella and **bring** it back tomorrow.

TOM: This book is interesting.

ANN: Please **take** it with you and read it.

TOM: Thanks. I'll **bring** it back on Friday.

ANN: OK. No problem.

# Exercises

## 42.1 Fill the gaps with *bring* or *take*.

- 1 Are you going to the shops? *Take*..... an umbrella. It's raining.
- 2 'Don't forget to ..... your books tomorrow!' the teacher said to the class.
- 3 Are you going to the kitchen? Can you ..... me some water?
- 4 ..... your camera with you when you go to Thailand. It's beautiful there.
- 5 Are you going to the office? Can you ..... these papers, please?
- 6 I'll ..... you a present from New York.

## 42.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |                                  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 Yesterday he brought me        | a these letters, please.         |
| 2 You must take                  | b bring your guitar.             |
| 3 Come to my house and           | c some flowers.                  |
| 4 Go to the post office and take | d food to the party.             |
| 5 Everybody is going to bring    | e your passport when you travel. |

## 42.3 Fill the gaps with the correct form of *bring* or *take*.

- 1 She always *brings*..... me presents. Yesterday she ..... me some chocolates.
- 2 Hello, I've ..... you some flowers. I hope you like them!
- 3 Can you ..... this present when you go and see Sonia?
- 4 She is going to ..... my book, read it tonight and ..... it back tomorrow.

## 42.4 Fill the gaps with *bring back* or *take*.

- 1 Can I *take*..... this magazine to read tonight? I'll ..... it ..... tomorrow.
- 2 When she went to Belgium, she ..... me ..... some chocolates.
- 3 Please ..... my umbrella. You can ..... it ..... tomorrow.

## 42.5 Where are you now?

If you are at an English lesson now, answer a).

If you are not at an English lesson, answer b).

- a Name three things you always bring to the lesson.
- b Name three things you always take to the lesson.



# 43 Get / got / got

## A Get with adjectives: for changes



It's light.



It's **getting** dark.



It's dark.



She's ill.



She's **getting** better.



She's better. / She's well.

I'm **getting** tired. I want to go to bed.



It's raining! I'm **getting** wet!



## B Get with nouns

If you **don't** have something you can **get** it. [get = buy or find]

I want to send a postcard. I have to **get** a stamp.

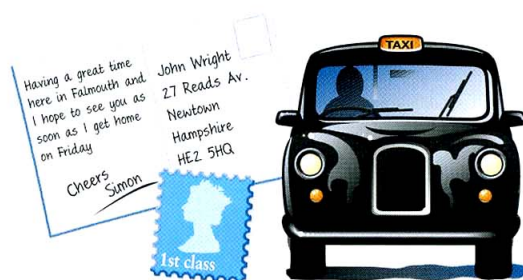
I'm going to the shop to **get** a newspaper.

Do you want a drink? I can **get** some coffee.

Where can I **get** a taxi?

I've finished my studies. Now I want to **get** a job.

My friend is ill! Please **get** a doctor.



## C Expressions

Maria and David are **getting** married in April.

A: When you **get** to New York, call me. [arrive at, reach] B: OK, give me your number.

A: How can I **get** to the airport? B: Take the airport bus at the bus station.

I'll see you when you **get** back from Hong Kong. [return, come home]

(See also **get up** in Unit 45.)

### Error warning

When I **get** home, I have my lunch [NOT When I get to home].  
I **get** there at 6 o'clock, so please ring me at 6.30 [NOT I get to there].

# Exercises

## 43.1 Complete these sentences using a, b or c.

- I studied too much and I got a) hot (b) tired c) sick.
- I ate too much and I got a) hot b) tired c) sick.
- I sat in the sun too much and I got a) hot b) tired c) sick.
- In winter in the north it gets a) tired b) dark c) wet very early.
- Ahmed got very a) dark b) better c) wet in the rain.

## 43.2 Complete these sentences using the correct form of *get* and a word from the box.

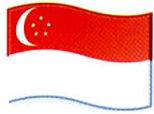
better light ~~dark~~ cold wet

- The sun is going down. It's *getting dark*.
- When the sun comes up it .....
- She's in hospital but she .....
- It's raining! I ..... !
- Please close the window. I .....

## 43.3 What / Who do you get if ...

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1 you want to post a letter? a stamp | 5 you want to read the news?           |
| 2 somebody is ill?                   | 6 you want to go to the airport?       |
| 3 you are thirsty?                   | 7 you want to earn some money?         |
| 4 you want to write something down?  | 8 you want to go out and it's raining? |

## 43.4 Complete these sentences.



Singapore (dep. 05.45)



Paris (arr. 12.30)

- This plane *gets to* ..... Paris at 12.30.



university



(25 minutes)



my house

- The bus from the university ..... my house in 25 minutes.



- When does the flight from Moscow ..... London?
- José usually leaves work at 6 and ..... home at 6.30.
- Mike is in New York. He won't ..... till the 14th July.

## 43.5 Answer the questions. Write sentences.

- In your country, how old are people usually when they get married?
- When do people usually get married? Which day? Which month(s)?
- What time do you usually get home every day? How do you get there?

## A What are phrasal verbs?

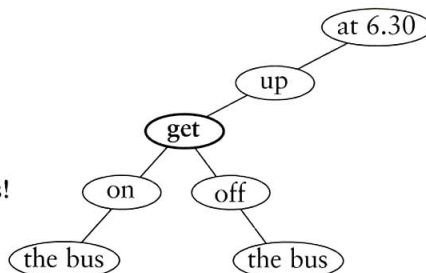
Phrasal verbs have two parts: a verb + a particle.

**get up / on / off**

I **got up** at 6.30 this morning. I'm tired now.

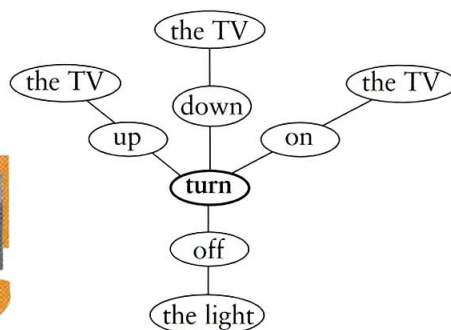
We should **get on** the bus. It's leaving in five minutes!

We **got off** the bus at the City Museum.



**turn on / off / up / down**

He always **turns on** the TV at 9 o'clock to watch the news.



It's a sunny day. **Turn** the light **off**.

**Turn** the TV **up**. I can't hear it.

**Turn** the TV **down**. It's too loud.

**go on / off**

Don't stop. **Go on** talking. It's very interesting. [continue]

Karen **went off** and forgot her handbag. [left]

**put something on**

It's cold and windy outside. **Put** your coat **on**. / **Put on** your coat.

**come on**

**Come on!** We're late.

## B One phrasal verb, different meanings

Note that one phrasal verb can often have different meanings.

**turn down**

She **turned down** the stereo. [made it not so loud]

She **turned down** the invitation. [refused it]

**take off**

Our plane **takes off** at 12.30. [leaves the ground]

She **took off** her shoes. [removed them from her feet]

## Tip

Make a special page in your notebook. Write down any phrasal verbs you see or hear. Organise them into groups, in any way that makes sense to you, for example, clothes, movement.

# Exercises

## 44.1 Match a sentence on the left with a sentence on the right.

- |                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 It's eight o'clock.              | a I'm going to turn it down.   |
| 2 We arrived at our station.       | b Please turn your music down. |
| 3 That funny programme is on soon. | c It's time to get up.         |
| 4 The bus arrived.                 | d We got off the train.        |
| 5 I'm trying to work.              | e Put on your raincoat.        |
| 6 I can't hear the news.           | f We got on.                   |
| 7 It's raining today.              | g Turn on the TV.              |
| 8 I don't want to accept that job. | h Turn the radio up.           |

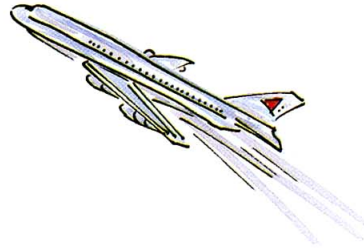
## 44.2 Put the correct prepositions in these sentences.

- It's dark in here. Turn on..... the lights.
- Our plane takes ..... at 6.25 and lands at 7.50.
- Come ..... ! It's time to get ..... . You'll be late for school!
- The children took ..... their school uniforms when they got home.
- It's time to turn ..... the TV and go to bed now.
- Get ..... the bus at the train station, then walk about 100 metres and you'll see the theatre.
- The students went ..... working until late at night.
- When they got to the beach, he put ..... his swimming trunks and ran down to the sea.

## 44.3 What is happening in these pictures? Use one of the phrasal verbs from the opposite page to describe each picture.



1 They are getting on the coach. ....



3 .....



2 .....



4 ..... oven.

## 44.4 Replace the underlined words with a phrasal verb from the opposite page.

- The plane left at midnight. The plane took off at midnight.
- I removed my hat and coat.
- She continued writing novels all her life.
- Michael left without saying goodbye to anybody.
- I refused the invitation to Maya's wedding.



# 45 Everyday things

## A Things we do every day



I wake up



get up



go to the bathroom



have a shower



have breakfast  
/'brekfəst/



listen to the  
radio /'lɪsən/



go to work



come home



make dinner



phone (or call)  
a friend



watch TV



go to bed

## B Sometimes I ...



wash clothes



clean the house



go for a walk



write letters / emails

## C Expressions

A: How often do you read the newspaper / watch TV?

B: Three or four times a week.

A: What time do you get up / go to work?

B: At 7 o'clock normally.

A: How do you go to work?

B: Usually by bus / train / car.

### Error warning

We say I usually get up at 8 o'clock, but today I got up at 8.30. [NOT I-used-to / I'm-used-to-get-up at 8 o'clock.]

(See also Unit 36: Have / had / had and Unit 39: Make / made / made.)

# Exercises

## 45.1 What do they usually do?

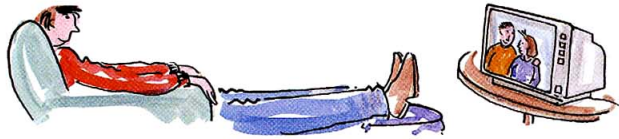
1 He listens to the radio every morning...



2 She w..... (every Saturday)



3 He c..... (every weekend)



4 He w..... (every evening)



5 She g..... (every Sunday)

## 45.2 Ask questions.

topic	question	answer
1 get up	What time do you get up?	7.30, usually.
2 go for a walk	How ...	Every Saturday.
3 go to work	How ...	By train.
4 have dinner	When ...	At about 7 o'clock usually.
5 come home from work	How ...	I normally walk home.
6 phone your best friend	How ...	Two or three times a week.
7 clean your room	When ...	On Saturday morning usually.
8 have a shower	What ...	Usually at about 11 pm.

## 45.3 Complete the sentences about yourself.

- I usually wake up at .....
- I go to the bathroom and have .....
- I usually have ..... for breakfast.
- I go to work by .....
- I usually have a cup of tea / coffee at ..... o'clock.
- I usually come home at .....
- I usually ..... dinner at ..... o'clock.
- In the evenings I normally ..... or .....
- Sometimes I ..... a letter or email or ..... to the radio.
- I usually ..... to bed at .....

# 46 Talking

## A Say (say / said / said)

We use **say** when we report someone's words.

She **said**, 'This is horrible!'

He **said that** he wanted a drink.

We **say** hello / goodbye and we **say** please / thank you / Happy Birthday / Merry Christmas / Happy New Year / Congratulations!

/kəŋgrætʃə'leɪʒnz/



We use **say** when we ask about language.

## B Tell (tell / told / told)

**Tell** is usually followed immediately by a person.

**Say** is not followed immediately by a person.

**Tell** is often used with *how* and *wh*-words (when, what, why, where) to find out and give information.

**Tell me when** you want to have dinner. She **told me how** to send a text message.

You can **tell someone the time / a story / a joke / your name / address / phone number**.

### Error warning

He **told** me his name. [NOT He **said** me his name.]

### Error warning

Can you **tell** me where the bus station is, please? [NOT Can you **say** me ... ?]

## C Ask

**Ask** is used for questions.

My sister **asked me** where I was going. / My sister **asked (me)**, 'Where are you going?'

A: Can I **ask you** a question?

B: Yes.

A: What day of the week were you **born**?

B: Thursday.

You can **ask someone the way / the time**.

You can **ask somebody to do something** and **ask someone for something**.

I **asked him** to turn off his radio. (*or* I **said**, 'Please turn off your radio.')

She **asked for** the bill. (*or* She **said**, 'Can I have the bill, please?')



## D Speak / talk / answer / reply

I like **talking to you**. [having a conversation with you]

### Error warning

Do you **speak** Japanese? (used for languages) [NOT Do you **talk** Japanese?]

Can you **answer** the telephone / the door, please? [pick up the phone / open the door to see who it is]

Teacher: Who can **answer** the next question? Joanna?

He didn't **reply to** my email. (also used for letters / faxes / texts)  
[he did not send me an email back]



# Exercises

## 46.1 Fill the gaps with the correct form of *say* or *tell*.

- 1 Can you *tell*..... me where the Plaza Hotel is, please?
- 2 She ..... me her name.
- 3 I ..... goodbye to her.
- 4 'Please ..... me a story,' the little boy .....
- 5 'Come here!' the police officer .....
- 6 The teacher ..... her students that they were very good.

## 46.2 What do you say?

- 1 You want to know if an English friend can help you talk to a Russian person who does not know English.

Can you *speak Russian*? .....

- 2 You want to know the word for 'tree' in German.

How .....

- 3 You want to know the time.

Excuse me, can you .....



- 4 Your course is finished. You want to say goodbye to your teacher.

I just want to .....

- 5 You want to know when the exam is.

Can you .....

- 6 The telephone rings. You are busy cooking food. A friend is watching you. (to your friend)

Can you .....



## 46.3 Match the verbs on the left with the words on the right.

- |            |                       |
|------------|-----------------------|
| 1 say      | a a letter            |
| 2 answer   | b someone to help you |
| 3 ask for  | c Japanese            |
| 4 reply to | d Happy New Year      |
| 5 tell     | e a friend            |
| 6 talk to  | f someone a joke      |
| 7 ask      | g the bill            |
| 8 speak    | h the door            |

## 46.4 Complete the phrases.

- 1 (on December 24th or 25th) *Happy*..... Christmas!
- 2 (you want to pay in a restaurant) Can we have ....., please?
- 3 (on the first day of the year) ..... Year!
- 4 (small child to parent) ..... a story before I go to sleep. Please!

# 47 Moving

## A Without transport



When talking about the past, we say: walked / ran / jumped / danced / swam / climbed / fell.

## B Transport

verb	transport	example
go by	car / plane / bus / train / bike / motorbike / ship / taxi / underground [NOT by a car]	We went to Paris by train last summer.
take	a / the bus / train / plane / a taxi / the underground	I took a taxi home yesterday.
ride	a bicycle / bike / motorbike / horse	I always rode my bike to school.
drive	a car / bus / train	My uncle drove a bus for ten years.

The pilot flies a plane.



How did you get to Istanbul? We flew there.



### Error warning

You arrive at or in a place [NOT arrive to a place]. The train arrived in Tokyo on time. The plane arrived late at Heathrow.

## C Expressions



### Tip

When you are travelling you will probably see a lot of signs and information in English. Make a note of any new words and expressions you see.

(See Unit 30: Travelling.)

# Exercises

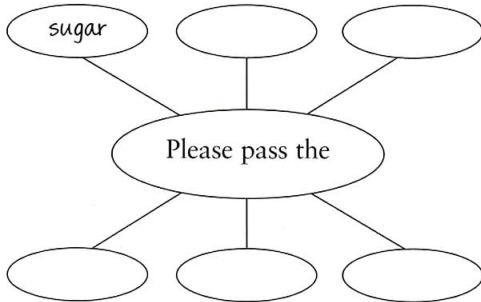
## 47.1 Complete the sentences using verbs from A opposite. Write them in the correct form.

- 1 Jack likes running..... round the park every morning but Silvia prefers walking..... round it with her dog.
- 2 Everyone ..... at the party last night.
- 3 Every day Jane ..... ten lengths of the pool before breakfast.
- 4 James can ..... very fast. He has won a lot of races.
- 5 Robert loves ..... mountains.
- 6 The old lady ..... on her way home and broke her arm.
- 7 Sandra ..... into the swimming pool and quickly ..... to the other side.
- 8 It is better for you to ..... to work than to go by car.

## 47.2 Ride, drive, go by or take? Write the correct word(s) in the sentence.

- 1 Can you ride..... a motorbike?
- 2 He works for a railway company. He ..... a train.
- 3 She sometimes ..... the underground to work.
- 4 He goes away from home a lot. He ..... a lorry.
- 5 I prefer to ..... a bus than ..... car.
- 6 Would you like to ..... an elephant?
- 7 You never forget how to ..... a bicycle.
- 8 I usually ..... a taxi when it rains.

## 47.3 Complete the diagram with six possible words.



## 47.4 Put these sentences into the past tense with the word *yesterday*.

- 1 Laura runs a mile every day. *She ran a mile yesterday.*
- 2 Maria often drives her grandmother to the city.
- 3 Bill flies to Madrid every week.
- 4 I sometimes take a taxi home from the station.
- 5 Jane often falls when she rides her bike.
- 6 Paul often misses the 7.30 bus to school.
- 7 The taxi driver usually helps the old lady to carry her luggage to the train.
- 8 Susie usually dances very well.

## 47.5 Answer these questions. Use *every day*, *once a week*, *once a year* or *never*.

- 1 How often do you walk to work or school? *I walk to work every day.*
- 2 Have you got a bike? How often do you ride it?
- 3 How often do you go swimming? Do you swim in the sea or in a pool?
- 4 How often do you go somewhere by plane?
- 5 How often do you drive a car?
- 6 How often do you go dancing?
- 7 Do you often go climbing?
- 8 How often do you take a taxi?

## Language words

This book uses some grammar words in English.

grammar word	meaning	example	in your language
<b>noun</b>	a person or thing	book, girl, pen	
<b>pronoun</b>	used instead of a noun	I, he, she, we, it, mine, yours	
<b>verb</b>	something we do	do, read, write	
<b>adjective</b>	describes a person or thing	good, bad, happy, long	
<b>adverb</b>	describes a verb	slowly, badly	
<b>preposition</b>	a little word used before a noun or pronoun	in, on, by, at	
<b>conjunction</b>	connects one part of a sentence to another	and, because, if, so, after, when	
<b>singular</b>	just one	book, house	
<b>plural</b>	more than one	books, houses	
<b>phrase</b>	a group of words (not a complete sentence)	in a house, at home, an old man	
<b>sentence</b>	a complete idea in writing, beginning with a capital letter and ending with a full stop	The man went into the room and closed the door.	
<b>paragraph</b>	a short part of a text (one or more sentences) beginning on a new line	This book has 60 units. Each unit has two pages.	
<b>dialogue</b>	a conversation between two people	Ann: How's Jo? Bill: OK, thanks.	
<b>question</b>	a set of words that begin with a capital letter and end with a question mark	Are you English? Do you like school?	
<b>answer</b>	a reply to a question	Yes, I am. No, I don't.	

## Tip

When you learn a new word, make a note of the type of word it is in your notebook.  
e.g. happy - adjective, in - preposition

# Exercises

48.1 Write the grammar words opposite in your own language.

48.2 Write these words in the correct column.

book speak good word house have write new man right blue say

noun	verb	adjective
book		

48.3 Add three more examples of prepositions.

in, .....

48.4 Are the following phrases, sentences or questions?

- 1 in the park phrase
- 2 Do you speak English?
- 3 a black cat
- 4 She's writing a book.
- 5 What's your name?
- 6 I like English.

48.5 Answer these questions.

- 1 What is the plural of book? books
- 2 What is the singular of men?
- 3 Is from a verb?
- 4 Is cat an adjective?
- 5 Is this a phrase? 'Jane loves Harry.'
- 6 Is bad an adverb?
- 7 What type of word are we and it?
- 8 Which of these words is a conjunction: good, us, because?

48.6 In this text, find four nouns, one adjective, one adverb, one preposition, and one pronoun.

The cat plays happily in the garden all day. She loves fresh milk.



Nouns: *cat*, .....

Adjective: .....

Adverb: .....

Preposition: .....

Pronoun: .....



## A Basic conjunctions

Conjunctions join two parts of a sentence. They help to show the connection between the two parts of the sentence.

conjunction	example	use
and	Kate is a student <b>and</b> she works part-time.	We use <i>and</i> to give extra information in the second part of the sentence.
but	They are rich <b>but</b> they aren't happy.	We use <i>but</i> when the second part of the sentence contrasts with the first part.
or	You can pay by credit card <b>or</b> cash.	We use <i>or</i> when the second part of the sentence gives a different possibility.
because	We went home early <b>because</b> we were tired.	We use <i>because</i> when the second part of the sentence explains why the first part happened.
so	I felt ill <b>so</b> I didn't go to work.	We use <i>so</i> when the second part of the sentence gives a result of the first part.
when	I went to the party <b>when</b> the babysitter arrived.	We use <i>when</i> to say when the first part of the sentence happened.
before	We left <b>before</b> it started to rain.	We use <i>before</i> to show that the first part of the sentence happened first.
after	We went for a meal <b>after</b> we had seen the film.	We use <i>after</i> to show that the second part of the sentence happened first.
if	You can have some ice cream <b>if</b> you eat your dinner.	We use <i>if</i> to say that the first part of the sentence will only happen after the second part of the sentence happens and it may not happen.

## B Other connecting words

These words are useful for making connections between words and phrases.

word	example	use
only	He <b>only</b> sleeps for three hours every night.	We use <i>only</i> to say something is not very big or very much.
like	She looks <b>like</b> her father.	We use <i>like</i> to make a comparison.
than	She works harder <b>than</b> he does.	We use <i>than</i> after a comparative adjective or adverb.
also too as well	He works in the shop and she does <b>also / too / as well</b> .	We use <i>also</i> , <i>too</i> and <i>as well</i> to say something is extra.

## Tip

These words are small, but they are very important to learn. Write a translation of the words in the first column of the tables.

# Exercises

## 49.1 Choose one of the words to complete each sentence.

- 1 Sam liked school because / but / if he had many friends there.
- 2 Sam left school so / or / and he joined the navy.
- 3 He hadn't travelled much but / before / after he joined the navy.
- 4 Sam was seasick when / if / so he left the navy.
- 5 He took a job in a bank because / after / or it was near his home.
- 6 He will stay at the bank when / if / before he likes it there.
- 7 If he doesn't like his new job, he'll go to university before / if / or he'll move to London.
- 8 He wants to get married if / when / so he's 25.

## 49.2 Write down nine sentences from the columns. Use each of the conjunctions once.



Mary agreed to marry Sanjay after they decided to set up a business together.

Mary agreed to marry Sanjay

Mary will marry Sanjay

after  
and  
because  
before  
but  
if  
or  
so  
when

she loves him.  
she loved him.  
she doesn't love him.  
they had two sons.  
he moves to London.  
he moved to London.  
she won't marry anyone.  
he was a pop star.  
they decided to set up a business together.

## 49.3 Fill in the gaps with words from B opposite.



I love swimming, my brother loves swimming <sup>1</sup> too ..... and my sister likes it very much <sup>2</sup> ..... . I can swim better <sup>3</sup> ..... they can! Almost all my family loves swimming. My grandmother swims <sup>4</sup> ..... a fish but she doesn't swim very often – <sup>5</sup> ..... every year or so, now.

## 49.4 Write six sentences about your family and your habits using *only*, *than*, *like*, *also*, *too* and *as well*.

I play tennis and my mother plays as well. My mother plays better than I do.

## 49.5 Complete these sentences about yourself.

- 1 I'm learning English because .....
- 2 I'll learn more English if .....
- 3 I'm learning English and .....
- 4 I started learning English when .....
- 5 I can speak some English, so .....
- 6 I'll learn more English but .....

# 50 Days, months, seasons

## A Time

There are:

365 days in a year (a year which has 366 days is a leap year)

12 months /mʌnθs/ in a year

7 days in a week

2 weeks in a fortnight

24 hours in a day

60 minutes in an hour (we say an hour /'aʊə/)

60 seconds in a minute

100 years in a century

## B Days of the week

Sunday /'sʌndeɪ/, Monday /'mʌndeɪ/, Tuesday, Wednesday /'wenzdeɪ/, Thursday, Friday, Saturday

The names of the days always begin with a capital letter in English.

Saturday + Sunday = the weekend



Monday (before 12 am) = Monday morning

Monday (between 12 am and 6 pm) = Monday afternoon

Monday (after 6 pm) = Monday evening

We say **on** + days of the week: on Monday, on Saturday, etc. I saw her **on** Friday / **on** Tuesday evening.

### Error warning

We say **at** + the weekend: I went to the cinema at the weekend [NOT ~~in~~ the weekend].

## C Months and seasons

Months: January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December

The names of the months always begin with a capital letter in English.

Some countries have four seasons: spring, summer, autumn /'ɔ:təm/ and winter.



The names of the seasons do not usually begin with a capital letter in English.

We say **in** + months / seasons: in July, in December, in (the) spring, in (the) summer, etc.

Birds sing in (the) spring.

### Error warning

My birthday is in July [NOT ~~on~~ July].

### Tip

Write the day and date in English every time you do an English exercise, e.g. Thursday 9th December 2010.

# Exercises

## 50.1 Answer these questions.

- 1 24 hours = one day.....
- 2 100 years = .....
- 3 2 weeks = .....
- 4 60 minutes = .....
- 5 7 days = .....

## 50.2 Complete this British children's song about the number of days in each month.

Thirty days has ~~September~~..... ,  
A..... , J..... and N..... .  
All the rest have .....,  
Except for F..... ,  
Which has twenty-eight days  
And ..... in each leap year.

## 50.3 These abbreviations are often used for the days of the week and the months. Write the names out in full.

- |                           |             |               |
|---------------------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1 Mon <u>Monday</u> ..... | 5 Wed ..... | 9 Feb .....   |
| 2 Aug .....               | 6 Jan ..... | 10 Sept ..... |
| 3 Oct .....               | 7 Apr ..... | 11 Tues ..... |
| 4 Sat .....               | 8 Fri ..... | 12 Nov .....  |

## 50.4 What are the next letters in each of these? Why?

- 1 S S A W (the first letters of the four seasons: spring, summer, autumn, winter)
- 2 S M T W ..... .....
- 3 J F M A M J J ..... .....

## 50.5 Correct the six mistakes in this paragraph.

I'm going to a party on<sup>S</sup>aturday for Jill's birthday. Her birthday is on thursday but she wanted to have the party in the weekend. She's having a barbecue. I think june is a good month to have a birthday because of the weather. I love going to barbecues on the summer. My birthday is in Winter and it's too cold to eat outside!

## 50.6 How quickly can you answer these quiz questions?

- 1 How many minutes are there in a quarter of an hour?
- 2 What is the third day of the week?
- 3 How many seconds are there in five minutes?
- 4 What is the seventh month?
- 5 How many months are there in ten years?
- 6 What month is your birthday in?
- 7 What day is it today?
- 8 What day will it be tomorrow?
- 9 What day will it be the day after tomorrow?
- 10 What day was it yesterday?
- 11 What day was it the day before yesterday?
- 12 What month is it?

# 51 Time words

## A Time in relation to now

**Now** means at this moment. **Then** means at another moment (usually in the past).  
I was born in Edinburgh. **Then** we moved to London. **Now** I live in Cambridge.



It is 10 o'clock now.  
I got up **four hours ago**, at 6 o'clock.  
**An hour ago** it was 9 o'clock.

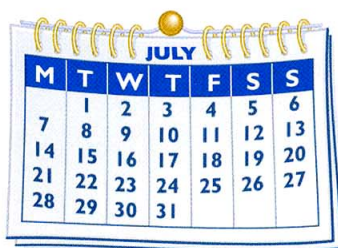
two years                      for two years  
2008–2010                  from 2008 to 2010          2008 —————> 2010

last year / last week / last Saturday  
next year / next week / next summer

It is July now.

Last month it was June.

Next month it will be August.

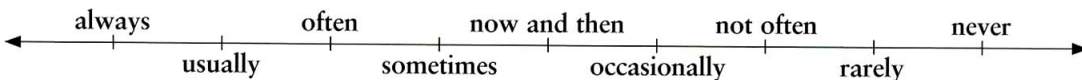


When we talk about time in general, we talk about **the past**, **the present** and **the future**.

**In the past** people didn't have television.

People may travel to Mars **in the future**.

## B Frequency adverbs



It **always** snows in Russia in winter.

It **often** rains in the UK.

The Ancient Romans **never** went to America or Australia.

## C Expressions

Notice the use of **a** in these expressions of frequency.

**once** [one time] **a week**: I go swimming **once a week**, every Saturday.

**twice** [two times] **a day**: I clean my teeth **twice a day**.

**three times a year**: I see my uncle **three times a year**.

**four times a month**: I play football **four or five times a month**.

I'll be with you **in a moment**. [a very short time]

Jane's in Paris **at the moment**. [now]

See you **soon!** [in a short time]

We met **recently**. [not long ago]

# Exercises

## 51.1 Fill the gaps with a preposition from the opposite page.

<sup>1</sup>In..... the past, Rosa worked in many different countries. Rosa worked in Hong Kong <sup>2</sup>..... three years, <sup>3</sup>..... 1993 <sup>4</sup>..... 1996. <sup>5</sup>..... the moment she is working in Tokyo. She will stay there <sup>6</sup>..... two more years.

## 51.2 Draw lines to match the centuries to their time.

- |                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| 1 the 19th century | — the past<br>the present<br>the future |
| 2 the 22nd century |   |
| 3 the 18th century |   |
| 4 the 21st century |   |
| 5 the 20th century |   |

## 51.3 Are these sentences true about you? If not, write them out correctly. Use other frequency adverbs from B opposite.

- I always go swimming on Fridays. I sometimes go swimming on Fridays.
- I usually go to school / work by bus.
- I occasionally watch TV.
- I rarely drink milk.
- I often wear a hat.
- I rarely eat chocolate.
- I always go to bed at 10.
- I never go to the theatre.

## 51.4 Read the sentences and answer the questions.

- Peter will get his exam results very soon.  
Do you think Peter will get them next year, next month or tomorrow? Probably tomorrow
- Harriet and Rupert met for the first time recently.  
Do you think they first met last year, six months ago or a week ago?
- I'll help you in a moment.  
Do you think I'll help you next week, in two hours or in a few minutes?
- It's 6 o'clock now.  
Two hours ago it started to snow. What time was it then?

## 51.5 Look at the table and write sentences using expressions like *once a week*, *three times a month*, etc.

John plays tennis twice a week.

	play tennis	practise the piano	have a business meeting in Germany
John	Mondays and Thursdays	Saturdays	the first Friday every month
Bettina and Amy	Tuesdays, Fridays and Saturdays	every morning and every evening	once in January, March, May, July, August and December every year

# 52 Places

## A General place words

Come **here**, please. [to me, to where I am]

Have you been to Lima? I'm going **there** in April. [not here, another place]

Jim is coming **back** from Portugal in May. [to here again, to this place]

There are books and papers **everywhere** in my room. [in all parts / all places]

(See Unit 40: Come / came / come.)

## B Prepositions

Luke is **in** the kitchen, making dinner.

There are two restaurants **in** the village.

Martha lives **in** Seoul / South Korea / Asia.

I'll meet you **at** the station.

I always sit **at** the front of the class.

I like that photo **on** the wall.

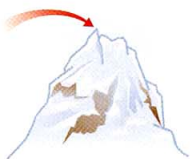
Don't put your books **on** the chair. I want to sit **on** it!

in

● at

on

## C Positions



the top of the mountain



the middle of the road



the bottom of the glass



the front of the car



the side of the car



the back of the car

the beginning of the motorway

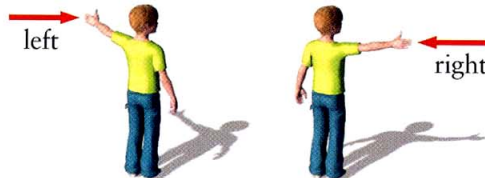
the end of the motorway



## D Left and right

This is his **left** hand. This is his **right** hand.

In York Street, there is a cinema **on the left** and a restaurant **on the right**.



## E Home and away

Is Mary **at home**? [in her house / flat]

No, sorry, she's **out**. [not here for a short time, e.g. at the shops or at work]

No, sorry, she's **away**. [not here for a longer time, e.g. on holiday]

No, sorry, she's **abroad**. [in another country]

# Exercises

## 52.1 Fill the gaps with *here, there, back* or *everywhere*.

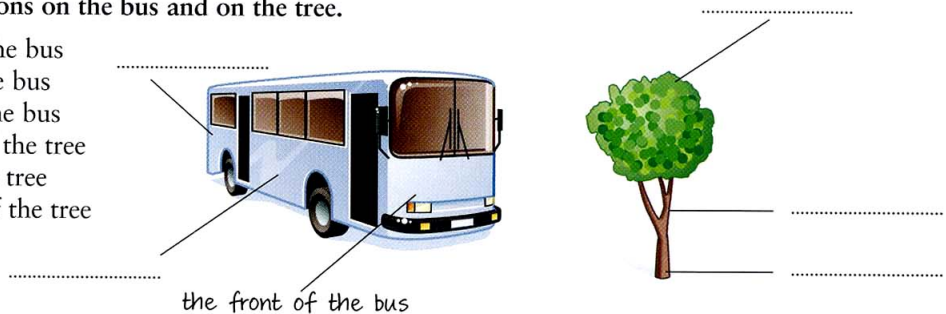
- 1 Thanks for lending me your dictionary. I'll bring it back ..... soon. (See Unit 42: Bring / brought / brought.)
- 2 Come ..... Emma! Don't go near the road! (See Unit 40: Come / came / come.)
- 3 This letter is for a teacher at the university. Can you take it ..... . (See Unit 41: Take / took / taken.)
- 4 I opened the washing machine too soon. Now there's water ..... !
- 5 I want to leave this letter in Nora's office. Are you going ..... ?
- 6 I'm going to Italy tomorrow, but I'm coming ..... on Friday.

## 52.2 Fill the gaps with the correct preposition.

- 1 My brother works in ..... Paris.
- 2 Why do you always sit ..... the back of the class?
- 3 Let's go and sit ..... the sofa.
- 4 What time do you arrive? I'll meet you ..... the bus station.
- 5 There was a picture of an old man ..... the wall.
- 6 Do you usually study ..... your bedroom or ..... the living room?

## 52.3 Mark the positions on the bus and on the tree.

- 1 the front of the bus
- 2 the side of the bus
- 3 the back of the bus
- 4 the middle of the tree
- 5 the top of the tree
- 6 the bottom of the tree



## 52.4 Fill the gaps with *out, away* or *abroad*.

- 1 I'd like to work abroad ..... and learn about a new country.
- 2 Is Lily here? No, she's ..... but she'll be back in about five minutes.
- 3 I'm going ..... tomorrow. I'm going to stay with my sister for a few days.
- 4 When we go ..... we like to go ..... and see new countries.

## 52.5 Answer these questions about yourself and about this book.

- 1 Are you studying English at home or abroad?
- 2 Are you going away this year?
- 3 What have you got in your left or right hand at the moment?
- 4 What is there at the end of this book?
- 5 Where is Unit 3 in this book? (beginning / middle / end?)
- 6 Where is Unit 36 in this book? (beginning / middle / end?)

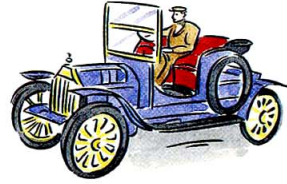


Adjectives and adverbs can describe **manner**, i.e. *how* we do something.

### A Fast and slow



adjectives This is a **fast** car.  
adverbs This car goes very **fast**.



This is a **slow** car.  
This car goes very **slowly**.

### B Loud /laud/ and quiet /'kwaɪət/



adjectives The music is too **loud**.  
adverbs The children sang **loudly**.



It's very **quiet** here.  
The teacher speaks very **quietly**.  
We can't hear him.

### C Good and bad



adjectives She's a **good** driver.  
adverbs She drives **well**.



He's a **bad** driver.  
He drives **badly**.

### D Right and wrong

This sentence is **right**. I like coffee very much. [✓]  
This sentence is **wrong**. I like very much coffee. [✗]

### E Expressions with way



He's speaking in a **friendly way**.



She's speaking in an **unfriendly way**.

You're doing that the **wrong way**.  
Let me show you the **right way** to do it.



# Exercises

## 53.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 This train is **slow**. It goes very slowly..... .
- 2 He is a **bad** singer. He sings very .....
- 3 She is always **loud**. She speaks very .....
- 4 He's a **fast** swimmer. He swims very .....
- 5 This girl is **quiet**. She always speaks .....
- 6 He's a **good** English-speaker. He speaks English .....

## 53.2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Please don't play your radio so loudly..... – I'm trying to study.
- 2 Let's take the ..... train, not the fast one.
- 3 Katie is very ..... at French but bad at German.
- 4 Why is Fiona behaving ..... an unfriendly way?
- 5 I hope this is the ..... answer.
- 6 It is better to do something well than to do it .....
- 7 The children are playing very ..... – they know that grandma is asleep.
- 8 Did I do this exercise ..... right way?

## 53.3 Are the definitions right or wrong? Use a dictionary.

word	definition	right (✓)	wrong (✗)
suddenly	very slowly		✗
sadly	in an unhappy way		
strangely	not in a normal way		
quickly	very slowly		
easily	with no difficulty		

## 53.4 Complete these sentences about yourself and your friends or family.

- 1 My sister plays tennis..... well.
- 2 My ..... badly.
- 3 I ..... fast.
- 4 My ..... slow.
- 5 My ..... quiet.
- 6 I ..... loudly.
- 7 My ..... in a friendly way.
- 8 I ..... the right way.

## A What are countable and uncountable nouns?



apples



shoes



plates

**COUNTABLE** You can count them: four apples, two shoes.



sugar



money



luggage

**UNCOUNTABLE** You can't count it. [NOT three luggages]

Can I have **three apples** and some **sugar**, please?

Are these **shoes** yours? Is this **luggage** yours?

## B Everyday uncountable nouns



This **furniture** is modern.



The **traffic** is bad today.



I'll give you some **advice** about your future.



He can give some useful **information** about Bangkok.



There is some bad **news** today.



It's terrible **weather** today.



**Accommodation** here is expensive.



I need some fresh **air**.



Studying is hard **work**.



**Air travel** is faster than rail travel.



## C Food

A lot of uncountable nouns are kinds of food and drink.



rice



spaghetti



butter



bread



milk



water



tea



coffee

*Note:* When we want to say how much we want, we say **two loaves** of bread, **three litres** of milk, a kilo of rice.

### Tip

When you learn a new noun, write it down in a phrase which shows if it is countable or uncountable.

# Exercises

## 54.1 Fill the gaps with an uncountable noun from the opposite page.

- 1 I'd like to buy a car but I haven't got enough *money*..... .
- 2 Cows give us ..... and .....
- 3 If you don't know what to do, ask your parents for some .....
- 4 The ..... at the seaside is very good for you.
- 5 Rob left school last month and is now looking for .....
- 6 There is always a lot of ..... in central London.

## 54.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |          |             |
|----------|-------------|
| 1 heavy  | information |
| 2 useful | travel      |
| 3 bad    | water       |
| 4 modern | luggage     |
| 5 brown  | news        |
| 6 cold   | furniture   |
| 7 space  | bread       |

## 54.3 Fill the gaps with the correct form of the verb *be*.

- 1 Accommodation in the city centre *is*..... expensive.
- 2 Spaghetti with Italian tomato sauce ..... very good.
- 3 The weather in Scotland ..... best in the autumn.
- 4 The news ..... better today than it ..... yesterday.
- 5 Travel ..... the most important thing in Sam's life.
- 6 Their furniture ..... very old and very beautiful.

## 54.4 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

- 1 The news ~~are~~ not very good today. *is*
- 2 Where can I get some informations about your country?
- 3 Let me give you an advice.
- 4 Cook these spaghetti for ten minutes.
- 5 Can I have a bread, please?
- 6 We need to buy some new furnitures.
- 7 The east of the country usually has a better weather than the west.
- 8 I must find a new accommodation soon.

### Follow-up

Use a dictionary to check if these words are countable or uncountable and make a note of them in your vocabulary notebook:

equipment  
biscuit  
homework  
vehicle

## A Good adjectives



a good restaurant



an excellent restaurant

good \_\_\_\_\_ very good  
 nice lovely great wonderful excellent



A: That's a nice jacket.

B: Thank you.

It's a great film. We all loved it.



A: It's a lovely day today! /'lʌvli/

B: Yes, it is.

A: Do you want to go to London on Saturday?

B: That's an excellent idea! [very good]



a wonderful view

/'wʌndəfəl/

## B Bad adjectives



bad weather



My hair is awful!

The weather this summer was very bad.

Other words that mean very bad are dreadful, horrible, terrible:

The food in that café was horrible. Nobody liked it.

What's that dreadful smell?

I had a terrible day at work today.

The traffic's terrible at 5 o'clock on Fridays.

## C Expressions

A: The train arrives at 7 o'clock; dinner is at 8 o'clock.

B: Excellent! / Great! / Wonderful! / Lovely! / Perfect!

*Note:* We often say **not bad** when we are speaking.

A: I get \$500 a week in my job.

B: That's **not bad!** (= good!)We use these adjectives with **how**:

A: I have to get up at 5.30 tomorrow.

B: Oh, **how awful!** / **how horrible!**

A: I've got a great new job in New York!

B: **How nice!** / **How wonderful!** / **How lovely!**

## Error warning

How awful! / How horrible!  
[NOT How bad!]

# Exercises

## 55.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 My hair's *awful*..... . I must go to the hairdresser's.
- 2 The weather's ..... . I don't want to go out.
- 3 The traffic is ..... in the city centre. Take the train.
- 4 That's a(n) ..... idea! Let's do it!
- 5 How ..... ! Three exams on the same day!
- 6 What a ..... house! The sea is only 100 metres away!
- 7 My timetable's not ..... . I'm free on Wednesdays and Fridays.
- 8 We have a ..... view of the mountains from our hotel room.

## 55.2 What can you say? Someone says to you ...

- 1 Do you like my new skirt? Yes, it's lovely!
- 2 I have to get up at 4.30 tomorrow morning.
- 3 Do you want to go out for dinner tonight?
- 4 (*in your town*) Excuse me. Is there a good restaurant in this town?
- 5 What do you think of your English lessons?
- 6 Is it OK if I come to your house at 6.30 tomorrow evening?

## 55.3 Match the words on the left with an expression from the right.

- |   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| 1 Blue sky, sun 25°                             | a Wonderful news     |
| 2 Five stars (*****)                            | b Awful weather      |
| 3 I don't want to walk. Let's take a taxi.      | c Lovely weather     |
| 4 90 out of 100 in an exam                      | d A very good idea   |
| 5 ( <i>in summer</i> ) Grey sky, wind, rain, 4° | e An excellent hotel |

## 55.4 Put these words into the good or bad column. Use a dictionary.

dreadful brilliant marvellous nasty fine

good	bad
	<i>dreadful</i>

## 55.5 Now think of two nouns to go with each of the adjectives in 55.4.

Use a dictionary to help you.

- dreadful *weather / film*.....  
 brilliant .....  
 marvellous .....  
 nasty .....  
 fine .....

**A** Saying positive / good things about people

Nice is the most common word used for people who we like / who are good.

Olga's very **nice**.

Richard's a **nice** man.

If we want to make **nice** stronger, we can use **wonderful**.

Ron is a **wonderful** teacher. All the students love him.

If someone is good to other people, we use **kind**.

She's very **kind**; she helps me with the children.

My teacher is a **lovely** man. (I like him very much)

My friend Neil is very **easy-going**. [relaxed, easy to be with]

Maureen's a **happy** person. (*opposite*: an **unhappy** person)

All my friends are more **intelligent** than me. [clever]

**Error warning**

Mary is wonderful [NOT ~~Mary is very wonderful~~].

**B** Saying negative / bad things about people

Marcia is **not very nice**.

Horrible is a lot stronger than 'not very nice'.

Margaret is a **horrible** woman; nobody likes her.

My uncle is a **difficult** person. He is never happy.

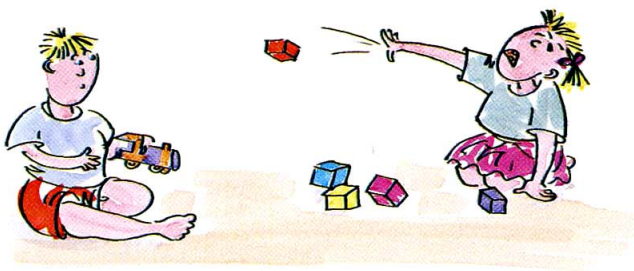
That waiter is **stupid**. I asked for coffee and he has given me tea! (**stupid** is a very strong word)

I don't like **selfish** people. [people who think only of themselves]

**C** Children

We often say that children are **good** or **well-behaved**. If they are not, we say they are **naughty**.

Tim is very **good** / **well-behaved**, but his sister is very **naughty**.

**D** Prepositions

Jean was nice / kind / wonderful **to** me when I was in hospital.

You were horrible **to** me yesterday!

It was nice / kind **of** you to remember my birthday.

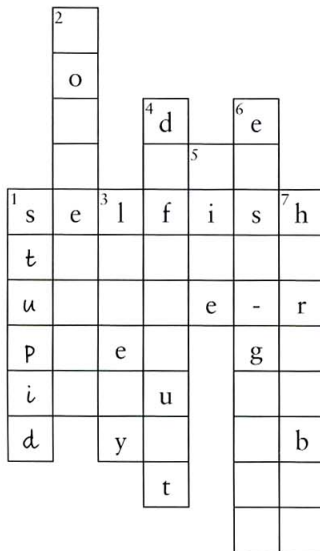
# Exercises

## 56.1 Complete B's sentences.

- 1 A: Jessica's very nice.  
B: She's more than nice, she's wonderful!.....
- 2 A: Was Paul nice to you?  
B: No, he was really ..... !
- 3 A: Let me carry your bag.  
B: Thanks, that's ..... .
- 4 A: Is your little cousin well-behaved?  
B: No, he's ..... .
- 5 A: Katie only thinks about herself.  
B: I know. She's really ..... .



## 56.2 Complete the word puzzle. Use the letters given and words from the opposite page. (Note that 'selfish' is the only word that reads across; all the other words read down.)



## 56.3 Circle the words that describe you.

I am: easy-going   sometimes difficult   kind to animals   sometimes stupid  
 happy   intelligent   selfish   horrible to some people   nice to my friends

## 56.4 Fill in the correct prepositions.

- 1 The teacher is never horrible ~~to~~..... the students.
- 2 It is kind ..... you to help me.
- 3 Barbara was wonderful ..... me when I needed a friend.
- 4 It was nice ..... her to ring me.

**Follow-up**  
 Think of some people you like and some people you don't like and write sentences about them using vocabulary from this unit.  
 e.g. I don't like (name). He/She's horrible.



## A Phrasal and prepositional verbs

Some verbs are used with different particles and prepositions.

I **listen to** the radio in bed in the morning.

I **waited for** the bus for half an hour yesterday.

I **asked for** a black coffee, not a white one.

Where do I **pay for** our meal?

I hope you can **come to** my party.

This book **belongs to** Sarah Smith.

What are you **thinking about**?

Helena **thanked** her mother **for** the present.

Jamie **apologised for** being late.



I'm sorry.



## B Phrasal verbs

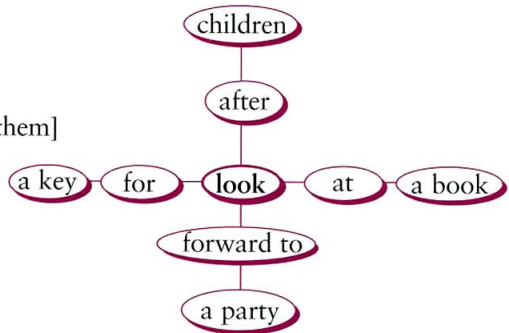
Some verbs have different meanings when they are used with different prepositions, for example, **look**.

I love **looking at** old photographs.

If you want to find your key, you must **look for** it.

Parents **look after** their children. [they take care of them]

You **look forward to** something nice in the future, for example, a friend's visit, or a holiday.



## C Adjectives

Some adjectives are also followed by prepositions.

I'm **good at** geography but **bad at** maths.

I'm **interested in** (hearing) all your news.

He is **afraid of** mice.

Lucy is **proud of** winning a medal and her mother is proud of her.

*Note:* You are **used to** what you know well: I'm **used to** getting up early, I always do.

You have **to get used to** something new, for example a new school or driving on the other side of the road.

## Error warning

She's a lovely person and I'm really **happy about** her success [NOT ~~happy for~~ her success].

## D Grammar

Prepositions are followed by a noun: Joe is **good at tennis** or by the *-ing* form of the verb: Joe is **good at playing** the piano.

## Tip

Look carefully at prepositions when you read in English. Make a note of any phrases which use prepositions in a new way.

# Exercises

**57.1** Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |                                   |                          |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 John is waiting                 | a for his mistake.       |
| 2 This bicycle belongs            | b about the holidays.    |
| 3 The children thanked their aunt | c for a train to London. |
| 4 Sally is listening              | d to the hotel.          |
| 5 He apologised                   | e for our tickets.       |
| 6 Let me pay                      | f to the football match. |
| 7 Hamid is thinking               | g to her MP3 player.     |
| 8 Over 100 people came            | h for the money.         |

**57.2** Complete these sentences using the appropriate preposition(s) and a word or phrase from the box.

books the children me people my party it a new one them

- 1 Isabel's granddaughter can't read yet but she likes looking at books.
- 2 A nurse looks .....
- 3 I can't find my glasses? Could you help me look ..... ?
- 4 It's my birthday soon. I'm really looking .....
- 5 Why are you looking ..... in that way? Is my face dirty?
- 6 I don't like my job very much. I'm looking .....
- 7 Alex is going to France in July. He is looking .....
- 8 I often look ..... when their parents go out.

**57.3** Write prepositions.

Anne has got used <sup>1</sup>to..... her new school and is doing well there. She is very good <sup>2</sup>..... English and maths. She always listens <sup>3</sup>..... her teachers. She is very interested <sup>4</sup>..... sport and she belongs <sup>5</sup>..... a tennis club and a swimming club. Her parents were very proud <sup>6</sup>..... her when she won a medal for swimming last month. Anne was very happy <sup>7</sup>..... her medal too, of course. She showed it to me when she came <sup>8</sup>..... my house last Saturday.

**57.4** Hiroshi is a visitor from Japan. Make sentences about what he found strange (X) in Britain and what he didn't find strange (✓).

- 1 speaking English every day X He wasn't used to speaking English every day.
- 2 driving on the left ✓ Hiroshi was used to driving on the left.
- 3 eating British food X
- 4 traffic jams ✓
- 5 expensive shops ✓
- 6 British money X

**57.5** Answer the questions about yourself.

- 1 What are / were you good at at school? What are / were you bad at?
- 2 What do you usually ask for when you go to a café?
- 3 What are you proud of?
- 4 What are you afraid of?
- 5 What kind of music do you like listening to?
- 6 What are you looking forward to?
- 7 Do you belong to any clubs?
- 8 Are you used to eating different kinds of food?

# 58 Prefixes

Prefixes (at the beginning of words) can help you to understand what a new word means. Here are some common prefixes.

prefix	meaning	examples
ex (+ noun)	was but now isn't	ex-wife, ex-president
half (+ noun or adjective)	50% of something	half-price, half-hour
in, im (+ adjective)	not	informal, impossible
non (+ adjective or noun)	not	non-smoking
pre (+ noun, adjective, verb)	before	pre-school, pre-heat
re (+ verb)	again	redo, rewrite
un (+ adjective or noun)	not	unhappy, unsafe

An **ex-wife** is a wife who is now divorced.

President Bush is an **ex-president** of the USA.

Something that cost £10 yesterday and costs £5 today is **half-price**.

A **half-hour** journey is a journey of 30 minutes.

**Informal** clothes are clothes like jeans and trainers. Formal clothes are things like a suit.

If something is **impossible**, you can't do it. It's impossible to read with your eyes closed.

You must not smoke in a **non-smoking** restaurant.

**Pre-school** children are too young to go to school.

You nearly always need to **pre-heat** the oven before you cook something.

To **redo** something is to do it a second time, and to **rewrite** something is to write it a second time.

**Unhappy** means sad, the opposite of happy.

**Unsafe** means dangerous, the opposite of safe.



## Tip

Sometimes words with prefixes have a hyphen (-), e.g. a half-hour programme, and sometimes they don't, e.g. an impossible question. Use a dictionary when you are not sure if there is a hyphen or not.

# Exercises

**58.1** Choose one of the words from the opposite page to fit in these sentences.

- 1 This part of the restaurant is ~~non-smoking~~....
- 2 I can't read this. Please ..... your homework.
- 3 In ..... English we often say 'Hi', not 'Good morning'.
- 4 I liked school but my sister was very ..... there.
- 5 I bought two T-shirts because they were ..... in the sale.
- 6 Don't walk on that wall – the notice says it is .....

**58.2** Write your own sentences to show what these words mean.

- 1 ex-wife      *Jennifer Aniston is Brad Pitt's ex-wife.*
- 2 ex-president .....
- 3 redo .....
- 4 impossible .....
- 5 pre-school .....

**58.3** What do you think these words and phrases mean? Look at the table opposite to help you.

- 1 an ex-husband    *a husband who is now divorced from his wife*
- 2 pre-exam nerves
- 3 an incorrect answer
- 4 an unread book
- 5 to retell a story
- 6 a half-brother
- 7 an unfinished letter
- 8 a non-alcoholic drink
- 9 to reread a book
- 10 to resend an email

**58.4** Find the negative forms of these words. Use a dictionary to help you.

- 1 possible    *impossible*
- 2 comfortable
- 3 polite
- 4 pleasant
- 5 attractive

## Follow-up

Look at the table opposite and write one more example of a word using each prefix. Use a dictionary to help you. Write a sentence using your word.

ex:      *My ex-boss lives near me.*

half:    *You stop at half-time in a football match.*

Suffixes come at the end of words. They help you to understand the meaning of a new word. Here are some common suffixes.

suffix	meaning	examples
er, or (noun)	person	worker, swimmer, instructor
er, or (noun)	machine, thing	cooker, calculator
ful (adjective)	full of	useful, beautiful
less (adjective)	without	useless, endless
ly	makes an adverb from an adjective	quickly, happily
ness	makes an abstract noun from an adjective	happiness, sadness
y	makes an adjective from a noun	sandy, sunny

He's a hard **worker**. He works 12 hours a day.

She's a very good **swimmer**. She was in the Olympic team.

Her tennis is much better now that she has a new **instructor**.

We've got a new gas **cooker** so the food should be delicious!

Can we use our **calculators** in the maths test?



Thanks for the information. It was very **useful**.

What a **beautiful** photo. I think it will win the competition.

This book is no help at all – it's **useless**.

I can't finish this book – it's **endless**.

He was late for work so he went **quickly** to the station.

They are **happily** married with two young children.

The mother was smiling with **happiness** as she held her baby in her arms.

They said goodbye with great **sadness** because they knew they would probably never meet again.

That beach is very popular with tourists because it is long and **sandy**.

It's a lovely **sunny** day – let's go to the beach.



# Exercises

**59.1** Which of the example words from the opposite page do these pictures illustrate?



1 a sunny day.....



3 a s.....



5 a c.....



2 a golf i.....



4 He's smiling h.....



6 a u..... thing

**59.2** Find the adjectives and match them with the nouns they go with in the box. Some adjectives can go with more than one noun.

electric worker fast beautiful cooker sandy weather sunny car hard idea  
useful book endless swimmer beach guitar smile picture fun useless

- |   |         |
|---|---------|
| 1 <u>electric cooker / guitar</u> ..... | 6 ..... |
| 2 .....                                 | 7 ..... |
| 3 .....                                 | 8 ..... |
| 4 .....                                 | 9 ..... |
| 5 .....                                 |         |

**59.3** Complete the sentences using the word in brackets and a suffix.

- Can I use your bottle opener....., please? (open)
- I'm tired because I slept very ..... last night. (bad)
- The waiter was very ..... and explained everything on the menu. (help)
- Thank you very much for all your ..... . (kind)
- It's important not to make ..... mistakes in your writing. (care)
- It was wet and ..... most of last week. (wind)
- I did the homework very ..... . (easy)
- Do you know a good ..... who could do some work on our house? (build)

**59.4** What do you think these words and phrases mean? Use the information about suffixes from the opposite page to help you.

- a hair dryer      a thing that you use to dry your hair
- a traveller
- slowly
- hopeful
- rainy
- painless
- badly
- a tin opener
- a footballer
- snowy

This unit looks at words which are easy to mix up.

### A Similar sounds

**quite** /kwaɪt/ / **quiet** /'kwaɪət/

This book is **quite** good. —> bad —> quite good —> good

My bedroom is very **quiet**. (= silent)

**lose** /lu:z/ / **loose** /lu:s/

A: Why do I always **lose** my keys!

B: Here they are.

A: Oh, thank you!



If you **lose** something, you do not know where it is / you can't find it.

These trousers are very **loose**. (loose means they are not tight, because they are too big)



**fell** / **felt**

**Fell** is the past of **fall**.

Yesterday I **fell** and broke my arm.

**Felt** is the past of **feel**.

I **felt** ill yesterday, but I **feel** OK today.



**cook** / **cooker**

He is a very good **cook**. [the person who cooks]

This **cooker** costs £500. [the thing you cook on]



### B Similar or related meanings

**lend** / **borrow**

If you **lend** something, you *give* it.

If you **borrow** something, you *get* it.

Sam wants a bicycle:

SAM: Will you **lend** me your bicycle? (= you *give* it to me for one day / an hour, etc.)

or Can I **borrow** your bicycle? (= I *get* it from you)

RITA: Yes, take it.

SAM: Thanks.

**check** / **control**

The passport officer **checked** my passport. [looked at it]

We use the mouse to **control** the computer. [tell it what to do]



### C Other words often mixed up

They're **waiting** for the bus.

I **hope** I pass my exams. [I really want to pass]

I haven't studied; I **expect** I'll fail my exams. [it's probable]

In English the **afternoon** is from about 12 o'clock till 5 or 6 pm.

The **evening** is from 5 or 6 pm until about 9 or 10 pm.

After 9 or 10 pm it is the **night**.



# Exercises

## 60.1 Fill the gaps with words from A opposite. The first letter is given.

- 1 Please be *quiet*..... . The baby is sleeping.
- 2 If you l..... your passport you must call the embassy.
- 3 I f..... tired this morning, but I am OK now.
- 4 We are going to buy a c..... for our new kitchen.
- 5 She f..... and broke her leg. She had to go to hospital.
- 6 It's q..... cold today.
- 7 Do you have this skirt in a smaller size? This one is too l..... .
- 8 My sister is a good c..... . I love eating at her house.

## 60.2 What does each word below sound like? Circle the correct word.

- 1 lose      *juice*      *shoes*
- 2 loose     *juice*      *shoes*
- 3 quite     *right*      *higher*
- 4 quiet     *right*      *higher*

## 60.3 Answer these questions.

- 1 Why do we use a mouse with a computer? To *control it*.....
- 2 What does the passport officer do to your passport? He/She .....
- 3 If you want to use someone's camera for two hours, what do you say?  
Can I .....
- 4 What do you say to someone at 3 pm? Good .....
- 5 What do people do at a bus stop? They .....
- 6 What do you say to a friend if you need £1?  
Can you .....
- 7 What do you say if someone makes too much noise? Please be .....

## 60.4 Answer these questions.

- 1 Are you expecting any visitors today?
- 2 What do you hope to do this summer?
- 3 Do you borrow things from your friends? What things?
- 4 Would you lend £100 to your best friend?

Look at these units to find other words that are often confused:

Do and make	Units 38 and 39
Take and bring	Units 41 and 42
Say, tell, speak and talk	Unit 46
Rob and steal	Unit 32

### Follow-up

Look up these pairs of verbs in a dictionary and make notes on the difference in meaning:

- 1 lie – lay – lain  
lay – laid – laid
- 2 rise – rose – risen  
raise – raised – raised



# Answer key

## Unit 1

- 1.1** 2 brother                      7 nephew  
3 aunt                              8 niece  
4 uncle                             9 mother  
5 grandmother                10 wife  
6 grandfather                 11 cousin

- 1.2** 2 aunt  
3 only child  
4 father  
5 wife  
6 mother  
7 grandchildren  
8 wives  
9 grandparents (parents is also a possible answer)

**1.3** Possible answers:

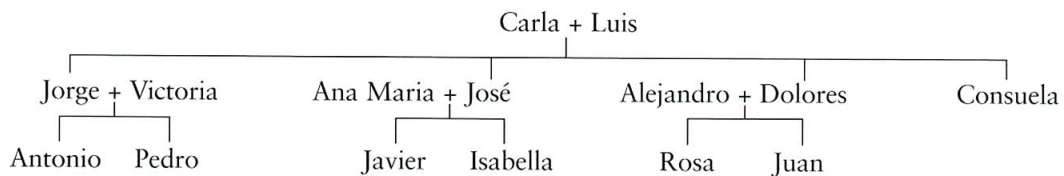
- 1 Chen has / has got one brother and one sister.
- 2 Chen has / has got two cousins.
- 3 Chen has / has got two nephews but he hasn't got any nieces.
- 4 Chen has / has got only one grandmother now.
- 5 Chen doesn't come from a very big family.

**1.4** Your own answer

### Follow-up

Possible family tree:

I am José. Ana Maria is my wife. Javier and Isabella are our children. Javier is our son and Isabella is our daughter. Rosa is our niece. Antonio, Pedro and Juan are our nephews. Carla and Luis are my parents. Jorge is my brother and Dolores and Consuela are my sisters.



## Unit 2

**2.1** Possible answers:

- 2 My father was born in South Africa on June 4th 1949.
- 3 My brother was born in London on June 6th 1974.
- 4 My husband was born in Russia on February 6th 1969.
- 5 My son was born in Cambridge on October 16th 1995.

- 2.2** 2 (bride)groom                      6 funeral  
3 single                                 7 honeymoon  
4 weigh                                 8 widowed  
5 divorced

- 2.3** 2 to 3 of 4 on 5 born 6 after
- 2.4** 2 Christopher Columbus was born in 1451 and died in 1506.  
3 Leonardo da Vinci was born in 1452 and died in 1519.  
4 Princess Diana was born in 1961 and died in 1997.  
5 Heath Ledger was born in 1979 and died in 2008.

- 2.5** 2 death 3 dead 4 died 5 dead

- 2.6** *Possible answer:*

I have one brother and one sister. My sister got married this year. For her honeymoon, she went to Italy. My brother has two children. They were born in 2001 and 2008.

### Unit 3

- 3.1** 2 nose 7 tooth  
3 heart 8 thumb  
4 stomach 9 back  
5 shoulder 10 waist  
6 ear

- 3.2** 2 toes 6 ears  
3 teeth 7 knee / shoulders  
4 nose 8 blood  
5 heart 9 brain

- 3.3** 2 That woman has got very big feet.  
3 My grandfather has a pain in his shoulder.  
4 The baby has already got two teeth.  
5 The little girl needs to wash her face and her hands before dinner.  
6 My hair is dirty. I need to wash it.

- 3.4** 2 football 5 headscarf  
3 lipstick 6 handbag  
4 hairbrush

### Follow-up

- 1 b arms c legs  
2 The eye is the hole in the needle.  
3 The face is the front of the clock (with the numbers on it). The big hand shows the minutes and the little hand shows the hours.  
4 The neck is the narrow part at the top of the bottle.  
5 The foot of the mountain is the bottom of the mountain (the lowest part).

### Unit 4

- 4.1** 1 suit, shirt, tie  
2 T-shirt, shorts  
3 socks, trainers  
4 carrying, bag  
5 belt  
6 jacket, coat

- 4.2** 2 belt – waist                      6 glove – hand  
 3 hat – head                            7 tights – legs  
 4 glasses – eyes                        8 scarf – neck  
 5 shoe – foot

- 4.3** 1 is                                        5 were; are  
 2 is wearing                            6 Is  
 3 has; is carrying                      7 are  
 4 is; are                                  8 is wearing / has

- 4.4** 2 jumper                                7 shirt  
 3 watch                                    8 coat  
 4 skirt                                      9 umbrella  
 5 bag                                        10 boots  
 6 hat

**4.5**

morning	night
get dressed	get undressed
or put your clothes on	or take your clothes off

**4.6** *Possible answer:*

I'm wearing a blue T-shirt and black trousers. I've got white shoes on. I'm wearing a watch, three rings and a pair of glasses.

**Unit 5**

- 5.1** 2 tall                                    5 young  
 3 slim / thin                            6 fat / overweight  
 4 fair                                        7 elderly

- 5.2** 2 Is Elena's hair blonde / fair?  
 3 Is Mike's hair long?  
 4 Are your parents elderly? (Are your parents old? is a less polite question)  
 5 Is his sister pretty / beautiful?  
 6 Why is Sara so thin?

**5.3** *Possible answers:*

- 2 Jeff has short fair hair and a beard.  
 3 Caroline's got dark skin and dark hair.  
 4 Stefan's hair is long and he has a moustache.

- 5.4** 2 What does your teacher look like?  
 3 How much do you weigh? / How heavy are you?  
 4 How old is your mother?  
 5 How tall is your sister?  
 6 What do your parents look like?

**5.5** *Possible answers:*

- 2 She's tall and slim with blonde hair.  
 3 I'm 75 kilos. I'm not overweight but I'm not thin.  
 4 She's middle-aged. She's 49.  
 5 She's very tall for her age. She's 1 metre 58.  
 6 They're medium height. My mother has long dark hair and my father has fair hair and a beard and a moustache.

## Follow-up

*Possible answers:*

Joanna: Joanna is tall. She has long black hair and brown eyes. She's very pretty.

Kevin: Kevin is medium height. He has fair hair and a beard. His eyes are blue. He's average-looking.

My mother: My mother is short with grey hair. She has green eyes. She's beautiful.

## Unit 6

- 6.1** 2 I feel sick. / I don't feel very well. / I feel ill.  
3 feel ill.  
4 I've got toothache.  
5 a cold

**6.2**

illness	treatment
a headache	take an aspirin
toothache	go to the dentist
a heart attack	go to hospital
a cold	go to bed with a hot drink

- 6.3** 2 cholera                      4 hay fever  
3 asthma                        5 cancer / heart attacks

**6.4** *Possible answers:*

- 1 Yes, I eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, and not many sweet things.  
2 I like / love swimming and cycling.  
3 Yes, I feel stressed when I have exams.  
4 Yes, I had an operation once / I broke my leg, etc. ('Be in hospital' means you are ill, you are a patient. 'Be in a hospital' can just mean you are visiting someone.)

## Unit 7

**7.1** *Possible answers:*

- 2 I hate cowboy films.            6 I love cats.  
3 I like flying.                      7 I like cars.  
4 I like tea.                          8 I don't like jazz music.  
5 I don't like football.

**7.2** *Possible answers:*

- 2 I prefer cats to dogs.  
3 I prefer sightseeing to sunbathing.  
4 I prefer cars to bikes.  
5 I prefer strawberry to chocolate ice cream.  
6 I prefer watching sport to doing sport.

**7.3** *Possible answers:*

- 2 I hope (that) the lesson ends soon.  
3 I want some food.  
4 I hope (that) my friend feels better soon.  
5 I want to go to bed.  
6 I want to cry.  
7 I hope (that) it gets hotter soon.  
8 I want him/her to feel / be happy again soon.

- 7.4** 2 Fred is thirsty.          5 Fiona is surprised.  
3 William is cold.         6 The children are hot.  
4 Sunita is tired.

- 7.5** 2 I am happy **about** my sister's good news.  
3 The teacher wants **us** to learn these new words.  
4 I **really like** spiders.  
5 My brother has a good new job. I'm very happy **for** him.  
6 My parents want **me** to go to university.  
7 I feel very well. How **about** you?  
8 Priya is a **bit** tired this morning.

## Follow-up

*Possible answers:*

- 2 I felt surprised yesterday when an old friend rang me.  
3 I felt upset when my boss was rude to me.  
4 I felt hungry when I saw some chocolate in a shop window.

## Unit 8

- 8.1** 2 Good luck!    6 Fine, thanks.  
3 Congratulations! / Well done!         7 Hello! / Hi!  
4 Goodbye.    8 Thank you.  
5 Happy Birthday!

- 8.2** 2 Happy Christmas!                            5 Cheers!  
3 Sorry!    6 Good morning!  
4 Congratulations!

- 8.3** 2 Thank you. Cheers!                          6 Happy New Year!  
3 Goodnight. Sleep well.                    7 Sorry!  
4 Good morning.                                   8 Happy Christmas!  
5 Good afternoon.

## 8.4 Possible answers:

ANN: How are you?

YOU: Fine, thanks.

ANN: It's my birthday today.

YOU: Happy birthday!

ANN: Would you like a drink?

YOU: Yes, please. An orange juice.

ANN: Here you are. Cheers!

YOU: Cheers!

## 8.5 Possible answer:

A: Hello, good morning.

B: Hi. How are you?

A: Fine, thanks. And you?

B: Fine. A bit nervous. I'm taking my driving test today.

A: Good luck! That's funny, I passed mine last week.

B: Oh, congratulations!

A: It's my birthday today.

B: Is it? Happy Birthday! Why don't we go out for a drink this evening?

A: OK. See you later. Goodbye.

B: Goodbye. See you soon.

## Unit 9

- 9.1 2 around 5 actually (really is also possible)  
3 really 6 around  
4 else

- 9.2 2 mind 3 Let's 4 Be careful 5 anyway

- 9.3 2 Look out! 5 Hurry up!  
3 What a pity! 6 Well done!  
4 It's up to you.

- 9.4 VERA: We need to celebrate. I got a new job!  
LUKE: Well **done!** How about **going** out for a meal this evening?  
VERA: Great! **Let's** go to that Italian restaurant. Or do you prefer the Chinese one?  
LUKE: I don't **mind**. I like the Italian one but it's very expensive.  
VERA: Oh, it **doesn't** matter.  
LUKE: OK. Why don't we **go** to the Italian restaurant and then we could go to the cinema afterwards? Your new job needs a special celebration.  
VERA: I agree. And I'd love to see that film with George Clooney. Would you?  
LUKE: **Absolutely!**

## Unit 10

- 10.1 2 Pasta; pizza (in either order) 5 meat  
3 potatoes 6 hot dog  
4 fish and chips

10.2

fruit	vegetables
pineapple	beans
grapes	onions
apple	carrot
pear	garlic
	mushrooms

- 10.3 2 strawberry 5 potatoes  
3 peas 6 tomatoes  
4 apple

- 10.4 2 beer 5 fruit juice  
3 milk 6 mineral water  
4 coffee

- 10.5 2 c 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 c

- 10.6 *Possible answer:*

My favourite foods are pizza, fish, strawberries and pineapple.  
My favourite drinks are tea, coffee and fruit juice.  
They are quite good for you.

## Unit 11

- 11.1** 2 yes  
3 yes  
4 no, the freezer is colder than the fridge  
5 yes  
6 no, a tea towel is for drying plates

**11.2** *Possible questions:*

- 2 Where's the saucepan / frying pan?  
3 Where do these bowls go?  
4 Can I help with the washing-up?  
5 Where can I find the milk?

**11.3** *Possible answers:*

- 2 a cup, a teapot, a spoon  
3 a frying pan, a cooker  
4 a plate or bowl, a knife and fork, or a spoon and fork, or chopsticks  
5 a glass or a cup or a mug  
6 a microwave  
7 washing-up liquid, a sink and a cloth or a dishwasher  
8 a washing machine

- 11.4** 2 a frying pan and a glass  
3 a teapot and a tea towel (*or* cloth)  
4 on the worktop next to the cooker  
5 a kitchen roll  
6 (a cupboard with) a bin and a cloth

## Unit 12

- 12.1** 2 wardrobe  
3 chest of drawers  
4 mirror  
5 hairbrush  
6 comb  
7 bed  
8 alarm clock  
9 bedside lamp  
10 bedside table

**12.2** *Possible answers:*

toothpaste, hairbrush, comb, pyjamas, shower gel

- 12.3** 2 Selim and Umit are washing their faces.  
3 Mrs Park is going downstairs.  
4 Mr Park is having a bath.  
5 Jaime is getting dressed.  
6 Lee is turning off the light.

**12.4** *Possible answers:*

bath, shower, toilet, basin, soap, shower gel, shampoo, toothbrush, toothpaste, hairbrush, comb, razor, mirror, bathroom cupboard, shelf

**12.5** *Possible answers:*

- 2 My bedroom has two windows.  
3 In my bedroom there is a small bed.  
4 There is one wardrobe on the right of the room.  
5 True  
6 I've got a lamp, some books, a radio and an alarm clock on my bedside table.  
7 There is a chest of drawers next to the wardrobe.  
8 I have got a dressing table.

- 12.6** 2 10.30 (for example)      6 off      10 shower / bath  
 3 undressed      7 fall      11 clean  
 4 get      8 wake      12 get  
 5 for      9 up

### Unit 13

- 13.1** 2 a sofa      6 a hi-fi  
 3 a coffee table      7 a carpet or rug  
 4 a picture      8 a remote control  
 5 a light switch
- 13.2** 2 relax in an armchair  
 3 close the curtains  
 4 pass the remote control  
 5 listen to the radio  
 6 watch TV
- 13.3** 2 I don't often listen to the radio.  
 3 We need some more **bookshelves** in this room.  
 4 I watched television all evening yesterday. (not 'at')  
 5 It's dark now. Please **close** the curtains.  
 6 Jim has some very nice **furniture** in his house.

**13.4**

F	T	A	L	W	X	A	R	O	C	F	Y	D
E	R	L	S	O	C	K	E	T	U	I	I	U
D	K	A	G	L	N	T	B	C	R	I	E	F
R	E	M	O	T	E	C	O	N	T	R	O	L
A	Y	P	F	C	H	A	I	R	A	P	J	I
D	E	C	H	K	I	R	G	T	I	R	U	G
I	B	O	O	K	F	P	S	I	N	E	B	H
O	G	F	E	A	I	E	L	H	S	C	R	T
S	U	A	T	L	E	T	V	C	A	E	U	O

### Follow-up

*Possible answer:*

In my living room there is not much furniture. There is a table, a TV, a desk, a sofa and two armchairs. The walls are white and there are some pictures on them. I like to relax in the living room. In the evening I watch TV there, or listen to music.

### Unit 14

- 14.1** 2 A doctor works in a hospital (or a clinic, or a surgery).  
 3 A waiter works in a restaurant (or a café).  
 4 A secretary works in an office.  
 5 A shop assistant works in a shop.  
 6 A hairdresser works in a beauty salon (or a hairdresser's).
- 14.2** 2 engineer  
 3 taxi driver  
 4 nurse  
 5 mechanic  
 6 secretary



- 14.3**    **Across**                      **Down**  
 1 bus driver                      1 doctor  
 2 teacher                        2 waiter  
 3 writer                          3 nurse

- 14.4**    2 engineer                      5 clerk  
 3 warden                        6 officer  
 4 librarian

**14.5** *Possible answers:*

- 1 I'm a teacher.    2 In a university.    3 Yes, very interesting.

**Unit 15**

- 15.1**    2 d    4 f    6 i    8 a  
 3 g    5 b    7 e    9 h

- 15.2** ruler, pencil sharpener, board rubber, rubber, drawing pin, pencil, tape recorder, cassette, notepad, OHP

**15.3** *Possible answer:*

In the room where I study English I can see a board, a noticeboard, a notebook, some pens, a pencil, a rubber and a pencil sharpener.

- 15.4**    2 does                          7 fails  
 3 passes                        8 study  
 4 take / do                      9 do  
 5 passes                        10 get  
 6 go

**15.5** *Possible answer:*

My three favourite subjects were languages, English and art. I didn't like PE, physics and maths.

**Unit 16**

**16.1** *Possible answer:*

I have the following: address, letter, envelope, stamp, phone number, phone, mobile, computer, screen, memory stick, mouse, keyboard, mobile device, CD-ROM, and email address.

- 16.2**    2 phone box                      6 address                      10 laptop  
 3 mobile (phone)                7 envelope                      11 memory stick  
 4 stamp                          8 letter box                      12 CD-ROM  
 5 mouse                          9 screen

- 16.3**    2 speak                        5 take (*or give him*)  
 3 sorry                          6 call (*or phone or ring*)  
 4 at

**16.4** *Possible answers:*

- 1 01223 240754: oh one double two three, two four oh, seven five four  
 0207 4417895: oh two oh seven, double four one, seven eight nine five  
 2 steve@stuff.co.uk: Steve at stuff dot co dot U-K  
 katerina08@coldmail.com: katerina oh eight at coldmail dot com

**16.5** Possible answers:

- 1 I prefer to phone my friends.
- 2 I send more emails.
- 3 I go online several times a day.
- 4 I prefer to use a laptop.
- 5 I don't write letters very often.

**Unit 17**

**17.1** 2 going 3 time 4 by 5 send

**17.2** 2 a package holiday (or package tour) 4 a walking holiday  
 3 a coach tour 5 a winter holiday

**17.3** Possible answers:

	you can take a lot of luggage	very fast	cheap	you see a lot as you travel	relaxing
ferry	✓✓		✓	✓✓	✓✓
car	✓✓✓	✓✓	✓✓	✓✓✓	✓
flight		✓✓✓	✓	✓	✓✓

**17.4** 2 passport 5 phrasebook  
 3 camera 6 tickets  
 4 luggage (or suitcase)

**17.5** 2 a visa 5 traveller's cheques  
 3 a plane 6 a suitcase  
 4 a rucksack

**17.6** 2 nightlife 3 local 4 postcard

**Unit 18**

**18.1** 2 toy shop 5 gift shop  
 3 butcher 6 baker  
 4 newsagent

**18.2** 2 a supermarket 5 a bookshop  
 3 the post office (or a newsagent) 6 a department store (or perhaps a supermarket)  
 4 a gift shop

**18.3** 2 ground floor 5 first floor 8 basement  
 3 fourth floor 6 second floor 9 third floor  
 4 basement 7 second floor 10 fourth floor

**18.4** 2 cash  
 3 (a £20) note  
 4 a credit card  
 5 change  
 6 a shop that sells meat  
 7 the floor above the ground floor (in a British building)  
 8 a shop that sells newspapers and magazines  
 9 the floor under the ground floor

**18.5** 2 Closed 3 Pull 4 Push 5 Open

**18.6** 1 cost 2 pay 3 (carrier) bag

## Unit 19

- 19.1 2 shower                    5 hairdryer                    8 lift  
3 TV                            6 sea  
4 phone                        7 key

- 19.2 2 a    3 h    4 f    5 b    6 g    7 c    8 e

- 19.3 1 At **reception** you can order **room** service.  
2 We'd like a **double** room with a **view** of the garden, please.  
3 The lift is **over** there. Take it to the second **floor**.  
4 Please **fill** in this **form**.  
5 I'd like a **wake-up call** at 7.30 and I'd like to **have** breakfast in my room, please.  
6 I have a **reservation** for a **single** room with a bathroom.  
7 Can I **have** the bill, please? I'll **check** it now.  
8 I'm leaving today. Can I **exchange** some dollars here before I **check** out?

19.4 *Possible answers:*

- Can I have breakfast in my room, please?  
Can I have / check my bill, please?  
Can I have a double room for tonight, please?  
Can I have some help with my luggage? or Can I leave my luggage here, please?

19.5 *Possible answers:*

- 1 It costs about £100.  
2 00 44 (from e.g. France)  
3 Breakfast is usually from 7 to 10.  
4 I think a TV is most important for me.

## Unit 20

20.1 *Possible answers:*

- 2 restaurant                    4 café  
3 fast food restaurant        5 bar / pub

20.2 *Possible answers:*

- 2 café – Jim's Corner Café        4 restaurant – The Taj Mahal  
3 take-away – Corner Kebabs      5 bar – The Red Lion

- 20.3 2 curry    3 salad    4 pie    5 steak

- 20.4 WAITER: Are you ready **to** order?  
CUSTOMER: Yes, I'd like vegetable soup and steak, please.  
WAITER: **How** would you like your steak? Rare, medium or **well-done**?  
CUSTOMER: Rare, please.  
WAITER: What **would you** like to drink?  
CUSTOMER: **An** orange juice, please.

20.5 *Your own answers*

20.6 *Possible answers:*

- 1 I'd choose mixed salad, vegetable curry and ice cream.  
2 Vegetarians can eat soup of the day, mixed salad and vegetable curry.  
3 I like eating out very much.  
4 I go to a restaurant two or three times a month.

## Unit 21

- 21.1** 2 swimming                    5 volleyball  
3 judo / karate                6 motor racing  
4 sailing
- 21.2** 2 badminton                    6 basketball  
3 table tennis                 7 skiing  
4 snowboarding               8 American football  
5 baseball
- 21.3** 2 Do you play football?  
3 Do you do any sports?  
4 Do you go swimming? / like swimming? / swim?  
5 What is your favourite sport?  
6 Where do people play rugby?

**21.4** *Possible answers:*

- 1 swimming, skiing, table tennis, tennis, kayaking
- 2 in a swimming pool, in the mountains, at home, at a sports centre, on a river
- 3 I like swimming, kayaking and table tennis.
- 4 I don't like tennis.
- 5 I'd like to go sailing.

## Unit 22

- 22.1** 2 science fiction            6 romantic comedy  
3 horror                        7 thriller  
4 action                        8 musical  
5 cartoon

**22.2** *Possible answers:*

- 2 romantic comedy – *My Best Friend's Wedding*
- 3 thriller – *Psycho*
- 4 western – *High Noon*
- 5 musical – *High School Musical*
- 6 cartoon – *Shrek*

- 22.3**            T H R I L L E R  
                  H O R R O R  
                  C O M E D Y  
                  A C T I O N  
S C I E N C E F I C T I O N  
W E S T E R N  
M U S I C A L  
                  C A R T O O N

- 22.4** 2 watched (some people say 'saw a DVD')  
3 played  
4 in  
5 film stars  
6 director

### 22.5 Possible answers:

- 1 I like romantic comedies.
- 2 My favourite film star is Nicole Kidman.
- 3 I prefer going to the cinema.
- 4 The last film I saw was *Tropic Thunder*.
- 5 You can look in the newspaper, go online or phone the cinema.

## Unit 23

- 23.1 2 He's gardening. 5 She's using the Internet. / She's using the computer.  
3 He's reading a newspaper. 6 He's listening to music / a CD.  
4 She's cooking.

- 23.2 2 reading 5 have / invite 8 see / watch  
3 talk 6 play 9 grows  
4 have 7 download 10 watch

### 23.3 Possible answers:

- 1 We talk, or we have a meal, or we listen to music, etc.
- 2 My best friend sometimes comes to stay. / My cousins sometimes come to stay, etc.
- 3 I like novels, and I read a newspaper every day.
- 4 I talk to them on the phone every day.
- 5 I have an MP3 player and I use it every day.
- 6 I chat to my friends online once or twice a week.
- 7 I often download music or films from the Internet.
- 8 *The Sims* is my favourite computer game.
- 9 I use headphones when I want to listen to music on a train.

### 23.4 Possible answers:

- |                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| gardening          | 2 |
| cooking            | 4 |
| reading            | 5 |
| using the Internet | 5 |
| watching DVDs      | 4 |
| listening to music | 5 |
| doing nothing      | 1 |
| chatting online    | 2 |

## Unit 24

- 24.1 2 musician 3 musical 4 music 5 musical 6 musicians

- 24.2 2 Patricia plays the cello in an orchestra.  
3 Chunshen loves playing the drums.  
4 Donna is having a piano lesson.  
5 Alex is a very good trumpet-player.  
6 Bethan plays the clarinet every evening.  
7 William plays the guitar.  
8 Emma is learning the flute. She will be a good flute-player one day.  
9 Suzanna is a violinist.  
10 Donna wants to be a pianist.

- 24.3 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 c

#### 24.4 Possible answers:

- 1 I download music about once a month.
- 2 I like the violin best.
- 3 Yes, I play the violin and the guitar.
- 4 I would like to learn the piano.
- 5 I like classical music and pop music!

### Unit 25

- 25.1
- |           |            |
|-----------|------------|
| 2 Brazil  | 5 Japan    |
| 3 Spain   | 6 Thailand |
| 4 Morocco |            |

- 25.2
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 2 Rome is the capital of Italy.         | 7 Berlin is the capital of Germany.         |
| 3 Canberra is the capital of Australia. | 8 Warsaw is the capital of Poland.          |
| 4 Bogotá is the capital of Colombia.    | 9 Buenos Aires is the capital of Argentina. |
| 5 Cairo is the capital of Egypt.        | 10 Madrid is the capital of Spain.          |
| 6 London is the capital of the UK.      |   |

- 25.3
- 2 In Mexico, Spain and Chile they speak Spanish but in Brazil they speak Portuguese.
  - 3 In Austria, Germany and Switzerland they speak German but in Italy they speak Italian.
  - 4 In Morocco, Egypt and Saudi Arabia they speak Arabic but in China they speak Chinese.
  - 5 In Switzerland, Canada and France they speak French but in Scotland they speak English.

- 25.4
- |               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| 2 Thai        | 7 Peruvian   |
| 3 German      | 8 Chinese    |
| 4 Egyptian    | 9 Australian |
| 5 Argentinian | 10 Polish    |
| 6 Spanish     |              |

- 25.5 Check your answers with your teacher.

#### Follow-up

The Sahara is in Africa.  
The Amazon is in South America.  
Wagga Wagga is in Australia.  
The Volga is in Europe.  
Mount Kilimanjaro is in Africa.  
The Mississippi is in North America.  
Mount Fuji is in Asia.  
Lake Titicaca is in South America.

### Unit 26

- 26.1 2 f 3 d 4 g 5 c 6 e 7 b

- 26.2
- 3 It is windy in La Paz.
  - 4 It is cloudy in Paris.
  - 5 It is foggy in Tashkent.
  - 6 It is sunny in Seoul. / The sun is shining in Seoul.
  - 7 It is snowing in Washington. / It's snowy in Washington.

- 26.3
- |             |           |
|-------------|-----------|
| 2 rains     | 6 degrees |
| 3 weather   | 7 storm   |
| 4 snows     | 8 cold    |
| 5 lightning |           |

**26.4** *Possible answers:*

- 2 It is usually 20 degrees in summer and 0 (zero) degrees in winter.
- 3 There are sometimes thunderstorms in August.
- 4 It is not usually very wet in spring.
- 5 We almost never have hurricanes.
- 6 Winter is my favourite season because I like snow.

**26.5** *Possible answers:*

- 2 sunny weather – I like to go to the beach / for a walk / lie in the sun.
- 3 a rainy day – I don't like to go out / I don't like to do sports.
- 4 snow – I like to walk in the snow / I like to go skiing.
- 5 a windy day – I like to go windsurfing / I don't like to go out / I love to go for a walk.

**Unit 27**

- 27.1** 2 at the tourist information office      6 at the (train / railway) station  
3 at the bank      7 at / in the shopping centre  
4 in / at the car park      8 at / in the library  
5 at the museum

- 27.2** 2 Exit      4 Please do not walk on the grass  
3 No smoking      5 Entrance

- 27.3** 2 The bus **station** / **stop** is over there **on** the left.  
3 For the Town Hall **take** the number 14 bus.  
4 **There** is a post office on the other **side** of the road.  
5 You can find a cash **machine** at the bank in High Street.  
6 We can get a map of the town at the tourist **information** office.  
7 Can you tell me the **way** to the railway **station**, please?  
8 **Excuse** me. I'm looking **for** a car park.

- 27.4** 2 town hall      5 railway station      8 post office  
3 library      6 pedestrian area      9 shops  
4 car park      7 cash machine      10 bus stop

**27.5** *Possible answer:*

Go left out of the tourist information office and take the first left. Then take the second left, which is Market Street. The shopping centre is on the left.

**27.6** *Your own answers*

**Unit 28**

- 28.1** 2 forest      6 farm      10 fields  
3 village      7 river      11 lake  
4 hills      8 country road  
5 wood      9 path

- 28.2** 2 cottage      3 village      4 town

- 28.3** 2 We went walking along a five-kilometre path.  
3 We went skiing down the mountain.  
4 We saw some wonderful wildlife in the national park.  
5 We had a picnic sitting by the river.

- 28.4** 2 He loves nature.      3 She wants to live in the country.      4 They are interested in wildlife.

**28.5** *Possible answers:*

- 2 There are no hills or mountains.
- 3 There's a big lake and two small rivers.
- 4 There are a lot of villages and some small towns.
- 5 There are a lot of small farms and a few very big ones in the countryside.
- 6 There are some good paths for walking near where I live.
- 7 You can't go skiing because there are no hills (and there's usually no snow).
- 8 You can see a lot of beautiful wildlife.

**Unit 29**

**29.1** *Possible answers:*

- |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 2 giraffe         | 7 Chickens / hens |
| 3 Parrots; hens   | 8 Rabbits         |
| 4 Tigers; lions   | 9 feed; give      |
| 5 horse; elephant | 10 take           |
| 6 Fish; birds     |                   |

- 29.2**
- |       |         |        |
|-------|---------|--------|
| sheep | lamb    | lamb   |
| cow   | beef    | calf   |
| hen   | chicken | chick  |
| pig   | pork    | piglet |

**29.3** *Possible answers:*

- 1 Lions, tigers, monkeys, snakes, dogs and cats eat meat.
- 2 Cows, sheep, pigs, goats, parrots (for feathers) and snakes (for snakeskin) give us things that we wear.
- 3 Chickens / hens, tortoises, parrots, snakes and fish produce their babies in eggs.
- 4 We can eat cows, sheep, pigs, chickens / hens, goats, horses and fish (and you may think of some other animals that people eat too).

- 29.4**
- | Across     | Down     |
|------------|----------|
| 3 cats     | 1 parrot |
| 6 lion     | 2 monkey |
| 7 horse    | 4 sheep  |
| 8 elephant | 5 tiger  |
|            | 9 hen    |

- 29.5** Write down the number you remembered. Try again tomorrow and write down how many you remember then.

**Unit 30**

- 30.1** 2 d   3 a   4 f   5 c   6 g   7 b

- 30.2**
- 2 True.
  - 3 False. Planes take off at the beginning of a journey. / Planes land at the end of a journey.
  - 4 False. You need a boarding card to get on a plane.
  - 5 False. Hiring a car is not the same as buying a car.
  - 6 True.

**30.3** *Possible answer:*

At Cambridge train station take a number 5 bus. The stop is just outside the station. Get off the bus at the hospital, cross the road and take the first road on the left. My house is on the corner of the street and it has a red door.



- 30.4** Across                      Down  
 3 map                                1 timetable  
 6 helicopter                      2 taxi  
 7 bus                                3 motorcycle  
 8 petrol                             4 platform  
     5 train

**Follow-up**

Keep the cards and test yourself every day. If you find this useful, write cards for words from other units of the book.

**Unit 31**

- 31.1** 2 Christmas                      5 Valentine's Day  
 3 Bonfire Night                  6 New Year's Eve / Hogmanay  
 4 Easter

**31.2**

C	H	I	C	K	E	N	F	D	K	N
R	Y	O	R	K	S	H	I	R	E	P
O	C	V	O	M	T	R	S	M	V	U
A	Q	E	W	A	A	T	H	X	L	D
S	M	V	C	S	H	G	E	Q	L	D
T	P	O	T	A	T	O	E	S	C	I
D	F	G	B	L	B	K	U	V	U	N
X	Z	O	E	A	P	I	V	Z	R	G
A	N	D	E	C	H	I	P	S	R	B
C	W	Q	F	T	I	K	K	A	Y	J

- 31.3** 2 India                                4 No. They eat it with their main course (with roast beef).  
 3 curry                                5 in the oven

- 31.4** 2 a state secondary school              4 a state primary school  
 3 a nursery school                            5 a private secondary school

**31.5** *Answers in 2009:*

- 1 Gordon Brown              2 Houses of Parliament              3 Queen Elizabeth II

**Unit 32**

- 32.1** 2 a murderer                                5 a mugger  
 3 a shoplifter / robber                  6 a drug dealer  
 4 a burglar

- 32.2** 2 arrested                                6 innocent  
 3 vandals                                7 terrorists  
 4 fine                                        8 prison  
 5 burglaries / burglars

- 32.3** 2 False – vandals destroy things    3 True    4 False – a car thief steals cars    5 True

- 32.4** 2 stole    3 robbed    4 stolen    5 stole    6 stolen

## Follow-up

*Possible answers:*

- 2 The student should pay a fine and return the book.
- 3 The woman should go to prison.
- 4 The terrorists should go to prison for a long time.
- 5 The woman should pay a fine and the police should take her car away.
- 6 The teenager should work in the park and plant new trees or pay a fine.

## Unit 33

- 33.1** 2 is                      6 online  
3 documentary        7 change  
4 nature                8 interview  
5 teenage

- 33.2** 2 e    3 b    4 a    5 d    6 c

- 33.3** 2 a journalist                      6 an advert / advertisement  
3 an evening (news)paper        7 a (TV) channel  
4 a cartoon                        8 an interview  
5 a nature programme

- 33.4** *Possible answers:*

- 1 I always read an evening newspaper.
- 2 I like news magazines.
- 3 I'll probably watch my favourite soap on TV tonight.
- 4 My favourite TV channel is BBC1.
- 5 I watch about an hour of TV every day.
- 6 I like talk shows and reality TV.
- 7 I watch TV online once or twice a week.
- 8 No, I don't like watching adverts on TV.

## Unit 34

- 34.1** *Possible answers:*

- |                                  |                         |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 2 The computer has crashed.      | 6 He's cut his hand.    |
| 3 The cup is broken.             | 7 The room is untidy.   |
| 4 The phone is out of order.     | 8 She is late for work. |
| 5 She has too much work (to do). |                         |

- 34.2** *Possible answers:*

- 2 cut finger / hands / knees
- 3 untidy room / desk / hair
- 4 late for school / an appointment / a concert
- 5 a camera / microwave / MP3 player that isn't working
- 6 too much work / rain / wind

**34.3** *Possible answers:*

- 2 dying plants 2
- 3 a cut finger 2
- 4 being late for work or school 1
- 5 a colleague or friend in a bad mood 2
- 6 a coffee machine that isn't working 1
- 7 a broken washing machine 1
- 8 an untidy bedroom 3
- 9 a row with a friend 1
- 10 your computer crashes 1
- 11 lost keys 1
- 12 too much work 3

**34.4** *Possible answers:*

too much work – get an assistant  
a colleague in a bad mood – pay no attention  
a crashed computer – get a technician  
a photocopier that is out of order – repair the photocopier  
a coffee machine that isn't working – drink water

**34.5** *Possible answers:*

My DVD player didn't work.  
My brother lost his credit card.  
I cut my knee.  
My cousin broke a glass.

## Unit 35

- 35.1**
- |              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| 2 car crash  | 6 forest fire |
| 3 flood      | 7 hurricane   |
| 4 war        | 8 traffic jam |
| 5 earthquake | 9 snowstorm   |

- 35.2**
- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 2 traffic jam    | 6 homeless people |
| 3 rush hour      | 7 car crash       |
| 4 forest fire    | 8 earthquake      |
| 5 crowded cities |                   |

- 35.3**
- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 2 a traffic jam | 6 the rush hour |
| 3 crowded       | 7 hungry        |
| 4 a car crash   | 8 a forest fire |
| 5 unemployed    |                 |

**35.4** *Possible answers:*

- |                            |                                      |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 2 forest fire, traffic jam | 4 hurricane, snowstorm, flood        |
| 3 strike, war              | 5 poor, hungry, homeless, unemployed |

- 35.5**
- |                           |             |
|---------------------------|-------------|
| 2 strike                  | 6 homeless  |
| 3 War                     | 7 rush hour |
| 4 car crash               | 8 polluted  |
| 5 earthquakes; snowstorms |             |

## Unit 36

### 36.1 Possible answers:

- 2 lesson
- 3 football / tennis / squash / rugby / darts / chess / cards
- 4 party
- 5 shower / bath / wash
- 6 exam
- 7 meeting
- 8 coffee / cup of coffee / cup of tea / drink
- 9 swim
- 10 dinner / a meal / supper / something to eat

- 36.2**
- 2 Nadia has gone to the hairdresser's to **have her hair cut**.
  - 3 That computer game looks great. Can I have a **go**?
  - 4 I want to have a **word** with my teacher after the lesson.
  - 5 Mum didn't have the **time** to go to the shop today.
  - 6 They **don't have** or they **haven't got** any cake in the café today.

### 36.3

<sup>1</sup> m	<sup>2</sup> e	a	l		
	x				
<sup>3</sup> p	a	r	<sup>4</sup> t	y	
	m		e		
		<sup>5</sup> g	a	m	e

### 36.4 Possible answers:

- 2 Have a good journey! / Have a good time!
- 3 Have you got a cold?
- 4 Can I have a look?

### 36.5 Possible answers:

- 1 I've got one brother and two sisters.
- 2 I have them at 9.30 every day.
- 3 I have a salad and a cup of tea.
- 4 Not every day, but I have to go on Wednesday and Friday.
- 5 I've got two.
- 6 Yes, we always have a good time in our English classes.

## Unit 37

- 37.1**
- 2 The Sharps are going to the beach.
  - 3 Lili and Karl are going shopping / to the shopping centre.
  - 4 Imran is going to Cairo.
  - 5 Jan is going fishing.

- 37.2**
- 2 This year Alison is going to pass her driving test.
  - 3 This year Alison is going to learn Spanish.
  - 4 This year Alison is going to watch less TV.
  - 5 This year Alison is going to keep her room tidy.

**37.3** Possible answers:

I sometimes go swimming.  
I never go skiing.  
I sometimes go dancing.  
I never go fishing.  
I always go sightseeing.

**37.4** Possible answers:

From Cambridge, trains go to London, Norwich, Ely and Peterborough. Buses go to Oxford, to Heathrow and to Scotland from Cambridge. From Cambridge roads go to London, to Huntingdon and to the sea.

**37.5** 2 Mum is **going shopping** this afternoon.

3 ✓

4 I love Paris. Did you **go there** last year?

5 Milos is **going home** at 4 o'clock.

6 We always go to the same café. Let's **go somewhere** different today.

7 ✓

8 I **go swimming** every Sunday morning.

9 We're going **sightseeing** today.

10 Jo went **up** to the top of the hill. / Jo went down to the **bottom** of the hill.

11 Let's go **fishing** today.

12 She went out **of** the shop.

13 ✓

14 Would you like to **go home** now?

## Unit 38

**38.1** 2 What are the girls doing? They're playing tennis.

3 What is the dog doing? It's sleeping.

4 What is the man in the house doing? He's washing up. / He's doing the washing-up.

5 What is the woman doing? She's reading a book.

6 What is the man in the garden doing? He's gardening. / He's doing the gardening.

**38.2** Questions and possible answers:

2 What does Lara Brown do? She's a secretary.

3 What does Sophie Hicks do? She's a doctor.

4 What do Jo and Ted do? They're students.

**38.3** 2 What did Lara Brown do? She went to a meeting.

3 What did Sophie Hicks do? She talked to five patients.

4 What did Jo and Ted do? They wrote an essay.

**38.4** Possible answers:

I often do the washing-up.

My husband usually does the washing.

My son has to do his homework every day.

My daughter does her exercises every morning.

I hate doing the housework.

I love doing the gardening.

We do business with Eastern Europe.

I always do my best.

**38.5** ANNA: Where did you **go** on your holidays? To London?

PAVEL: No, we **didn't** go to London this year. We went to Scotland.

ANNA: **Does** your grandmother **live** in Scotland?

PAVEL: No, she **doesn't** but my uncle **does**.

## Unit 39

- 39.1** 2 made                      5 made / have made / 've made  
3 making                      6 making  
4 make
- 39.2** 2 Long lessons always make me (feel) tired.  
3 She was horrible to me; it made me (feel) angry.  
4 It's a lovely song. It makes me (feel) happy.  
5 That meal was horrible. It made me (feel) sick.
- 39.3** 2 She's making tea.                      5 The children are making a mess.  
3 The children are making a noise.      6 The girl is making her bed.  
4 They're making a video / a film.
- 39.4** 2 Can I **take** a photo of you?  
3 He's 25 but he never **does** his own washing. He takes his dirty clothes to his mother's.  
4 Are you **doing** / **taking** an exam tomorrow?  
5 Have you **done** your homework yet?

## Unit 40

- 40.1** 2 back (home)              5 see  
3 into                      6 out of / back from / home from  
4 from
- 40.2** 2 Come here!  
3 We're going to a party. Do you want to come along?  
4 I come from France.
- 40.3** 2 came      3 comes      4 Are; coming      5 comes
- 40.4** *Possible answers:*  
1 I usually come home at five-thirty.  
2 I'm from / I come from Scotland / Jamaica / Pakistan / Latvia / Bolivia, etc.  
3 I sit down and talk to my friends / take out my books.

### Follow-up

*Possible meanings and example sentences:*

- 1 Meaning: 'come round' can mean 'come to someone's house or flat'.  
Example: Do you want to come round this afternoon for a coffee?
- 2 Meaning: 'come across' can mean 'meet or find for the first time'.  
Example: I come across lots of new words when I read English books.
- 3 Meaning: 'come up' can mean 'be mentioned or occur in conversation'.  
Example: When new words come up in class, the teacher tells us the meaning.

## Unit 41

- 41.1** *Possible answers:*  
1 It takes me 10 minutes to get to university.  
2 It takes me 30 minutes to go from my house to the nearest railway station.  
3 It takes me 20 minutes to get to my best friend's house.  
4 It takes me an hour to do one unit of this book.
- 41.2** 2 take the train      3 take a course      4 take some water
- 41.3** 2 You can / have to take a taxi.      3 He takes the bus.      4 They take the underground.

- 41.4 2 I take my / an umbrella.      4 I take my books and pens / pencils.  
3 I take my passport.                5 I take my mobile (phone).

41.5 *Possible answer:*

It took me about an hour.

## Unit 42

- 42.1 2 bring    3 bring    4 Take    5 take    6 bring

- 42.2 2 e You must take your passport when you travel.  
3 b Come to my house and bring your guitar.  
4 a Go to the post office and take these letters, please.  
5 d Everybody is going to bring food to the party.

- 42.3 1 brings; brought    2 brought    3 take    4 take; bring

- 42.4 1 take; bring it back    2 brought me back    3 take; bring it back

42.5 *Possible answer:*

I always bring / take my vocabulary notebook, a pen and my coursebook to the lesson.

## Unit 43

- 43.1 2 c sick      4 b dark  
3 a hot        5 c wet

- 43.2 2 When the sun comes up it gets light.      4 It's raining! I'm getting wet!  
3 She's in hospital but she's getting better.    5 Please close the window. I'm getting cold.

- 43.3 2 a doctor  
3 a drink  
4 a pen / pencil and paper  
5 a newspaper  
6 a taxi / a bus / a train  
7 a job  
8 an umbrella / a raincoat

- 43.4 2 gets to    3 get to    4 gets (back)    5 get back / home

43.5 *Possible answers:*

- 1 In Britain, people usually get married when they are 20 to 30 years old.  
2 People usually get married at the weekend, mostly on Saturday. April, May and June are very popular months (spring and summer).  
3 I get home at about 5 o'clock. I get there by car.

## Unit 44

- 44.1 2 d    3 g    4 f    5 b    6 h    7 e    8 a

- 44.2 2 off    3 on; up    4 off    5 off    6 off    7 on    8 on

- 44.3 2 He is putting on his shoes.    3 A plane is taking off.    4 She is turning on the oven.

- 44.4 2 took off    3 went on    4 went off    5 turned down

## Unit 45

- 45.1 2 She washes (the / her) clothes every Saturday.    4 He watches TV / television every evening.  
3 He cleans the house / his flat every weekend.        5 She goes for a walk every Sunday.

**45.2** *Possible questions:*

- 2 How often do you go for a walk?
- 3 How do you go to work?
- 4 When do you have dinner?
- 5 How do you come home from work?
- 6 How often do you phone your best friend?
- 7 When do you clean your room?
- 8 What time do you have a shower?

**45.3** *Possible answers:*

- 1 I usually wake up at 7 o'clock.
- 2 I go to the bathroom and have a shower.
- 3 I usually have tea and toast for breakfast.
- 4 I go to work by car.
- 5 I usually have a cup of coffee at 11 o'clock.
- 6 I usually come home at about 6 pm.
- 7 I usually make dinner at 7 o'clock.
- 8 In the evenings I normally watch TV or go for a walk.
- 9 Sometimes I write a letter or email or listen to the radio.
- 10 I usually go to bed at 11 o'clock.

**Unit 46**

**46.1** 2 told    3 said    4 tell; said    5 said    6 told

- 46.2**
- 2 How do you say 'tree' in German?
  - 3 Excuse me, can you tell me the time?
  - 4 I just want to say goodbye (to you).
  - 5 Can you tell me when the exam is?
  - 6 Can you answer the phone, please? / Can you tell them I'm busy / I'm cooking?

- 46.3**
- 2 h    answer the door
  - 3 g    ask for the bill
  - 4 a    reply to a letter
  - 5 f    tell someone a joke
  - 6 e    talk to a friend
  - 7 b    ask someone to help you
  - 8 c    speak Japanese

We can also say 'answer a letter', but not 'reply to the door'!

- 46.4**
- 2 Can we have the bill, please?
  - 3 Happy New Year!
  - 4 Tell me a story before I go to sleep. Please!

**Unit 47**

**47.1** 2 danced            4 run                    6 fell                    8 walk  
3 swims            5 climbing            7 jumped; swam

- 47.2**
- 2 drives            6 ride
  - 3 takes            7 ride
  - 4 drives            8 take
  - 5 take; go by

*Note:* You can also use 'go by' with all these forms of transport (but without 'the' or 'a'), i.e. you can go to work by bicycle, go home by underground / taxi, etc.

**47.3** *Possible answers:*

salt, pepper, bread, butter, water, sauce, salad



- 47.4** 2 Maria drove her grandmother to the city yesterday.  
 3 Bill flew to Madrid yesterday.  
 4 I took a taxi home from the station yesterday.  
 5 Jane fell when she rode her bike yesterday.  
 6 Paul missed the 7.30 bus to school yesterday.  
 7 The taxi driver helped the old lady to carry her luggage to the train yesterday.  
 8 Susie danced very well yesterday.

**47.5** *Possible answers:*

- 2 I ride my bike once a week.  
 3 I swim in the sea once a year. I swim in a pool once a week.  
 4 I go somewhere by plane once a year.  
 5 I drive my car every day.  
 6 I go dancing once a week.  
 7 I never go climbing.  
 8 I take a taxi once or twice a year.

**Unit 48**

**48.1** Check your work with your teacher if you are not sure about your answers.

**48.2**

noun	verb	adjective
book	speak	good
word	have	new
house	write	right
man	say	blue

**48.3** *Possible answers:*

on, at, by, to, for, with, below

- 48.4** 2 question                      5 question  
 3 phrase                              6 sentence  
 4 sentence

- 48.5** 2 man    6 No, it's an adjective. The adverb is badly.  
 3 No, it's a preposition.                      7 They are both pronouns.  
 4 No, it's a noun.                                8 because  
 5 No, it's a sentence.

- 48.6** Nouns:        cat, garden, day, milk  
 Adjective:    fresh  
 Adverb:       happily  
 Preposition: in  
 Pronoun:     She

**Unit 49**

- 49.1** 2 and            4 so            6 if            8 when  
 3 before       5 because    7 or

**49.2** *Possible sentences:*

Mary agreed to marry Sanjay after he moved to London. / Mary agreed to marry Sanjay after they decided to set up a business together.  
Mary agreed to marry Sanjay and they had two sons. / Mary agreed to marry Sanjay and they decided to set up a business together.  
Mary agreed to marry Sanjay because she loved him. / Mary agreed to marry Sanjay because he was a pop star.  
Mary agreed to marry Sanjay before he moved to London. / Mary agreed to marry Sanjay before they decided to set up a business together.  
Mary will marry Sanjay because she loves him.  
Mary will marry Sanjay before he moves to London.  
Mary will marry Sanjay but she doesn't love him.  
Mary agreed to marry Sanjay if he moved to London.  
Mary will marry Sanjay or she won't marry anyone.  
Mary agreed to marry Sanjay so he moved to London.  
Mary will marry Sanjay when he moves to London.

- 49.3** 2 as well / also (too is also possible but it is better to use a different word as too is already in the sentence)  
3 than  
4 like  
5 only

**49.4** *Possible answers:*

I only play tennis in the summer.  
My sister plays the piano better than I do.  
My brother swims like a fish.  
I like listening to music and I like reading also.  
I like going skiing too.  
I often go skiing with the children and sometimes my husband comes as well.

**49.5** *Possible answers:*

- 1 I'm learning English because I enjoy it.
- 2 I'll learn more English if I do all the exercises in this book.
- 3 I'm learning English and I'm also studying Spanish.
- 4 I started learning English when I was ten.
- 5 I can speak some English, so it's OK on holiday in the UK.
- 6 I'll learn more English but sometimes it's difficult.

## Unit 50

- 50.1** 2 a century    3 a fortnight    4 an hour    5 a week

- 50.2** Thirty days has September,  
April, June and November.  
All the rest have thirty-one.  
Except for February  
Which has twenty-eight days  
And twenty-nine in each leap year.

This is a traditional rhyme which people use to help them remember the number of days of the month. It means that:  
September, April, June and November have 30 days. The other months have 31 days except for February which has 28 days and 29 days in a leap year.

- 50.3** 2 August            5 Wednesday            8 Friday            11 Tuesday  
 3 October            6 January            9 February            12 November  
 4 Saturday            7 April            10 September

- 50.4** 2 T F S (the first letters of the days of the week)  
 3 A S O N D (the first letters of the months)

**50.5** I'm going to a party on **Saturday** for Jill's birthday. Her birthday is on **Thursday** but she wanted to have the party at the weekend. She's having a barbecue. I think **June** is a good month to have a birthday because of the weather. I love going to barbecues **in** the summer. My birthday is in **winter** and it's too cold to eat outside!

- 50.6** 1 15    2 Tuesday (or Wednesday)    3 300    4 July    5 120  
 6-12 It is not possible to give answers to questions 6 to 12. Check with your teacher if you are not sure if your answers are correct or not.

## Unit 51

- 51.1** 2 for    3 from    4 to    5 At    6 for
- 51.2** 2 the 22nd century – the future    4 the 21st century – the present  
 3 the 18th century – the past    5 the 20th century – the past

**51.3** Possible answers:

- 2 I sometimes go to school by bus. I usually go by car.  
 3 I often watch TV.  
 4 I never drink milk. I usually drink coffee.  
 5 I never wear a hat.  
 6 I often eat chocolate.  
 7 I sometimes go to bed at 10. I usually go to bed at 11.  
 8 I sometimes go to the theatre.

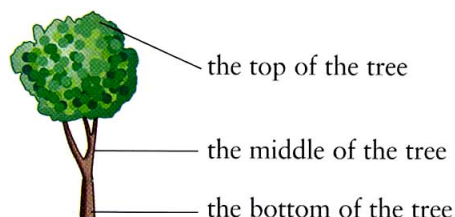
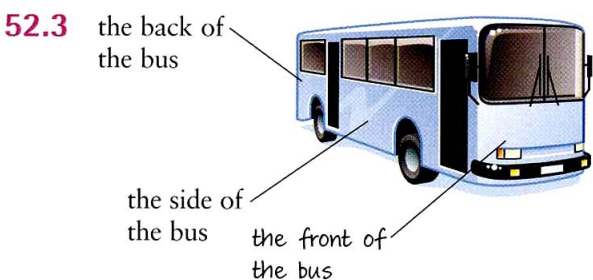
- 51.4** 2 Probably a week ago    3 In a few minutes    4 4 o'clock

**51.5** John plays tennis twice a week. He practises the piano once a week and he has a business meeting in Germany once a month.  
 Bettina and Amy play tennis three times a week. They practise the piano twice a day. They go to Germany for a business meeting six times a year. *or* They have a business meeting in Germany six times a year.

## Unit 52

- 52.1** 2 here    3 there    4 everywhere    5 there    6 back

- 52.2** 2 at    3 on    4 at    5 on    6 in; in



- 52.4** 2 out    3 away    4 away; abroad

## 52.5 Possible answers:

- 1 I'm studying English in the UK.
- 2 Yes, I'm going to Dublin and to the US.
- 3 At the moment I have a pen in my right hand.
- 4 The Answer key is at the end of this book.
- 5 Unit 3 is at the beginning of this book (Unit 3 out of 60 units). (Note: we say *at*.)
- 6 Unit 36 is in the middle of this book (Unit 36 out of 60 units). (Note: we say *in*.)

## Unit 53

53.1 2 badly 3 loudly 4 fast [NOT ~~fastly~~] 5 quietly 6 well

53.2 2 slow 3 good 4 in 5 right 6 badly 7 quietly 8 the

53.3 suddenly ✗ sadly ✓ strangely ✓ quickly ✗ easily ✓  
*Suddenly* means very quickly, when you are not expecting it.  
*Quickly* is similar to 'fast' when fast is an adverb, not when it is an adjective.

## 53.4 Possible answers:

- 2 My brother speaks German badly.
- 3 I usually eat too fast.
- 4 My dog is old and very slow.
- 5 My voice is quiet.
- 6 I like to sing loudly.
- 7 My Mum always behaves in a friendly way.
- 8 I like to do things the right way.

## Unit 54

54.1 2 milk; butter 3 advice 4 air 5 work 6 traffic

54.2 2 useful information 4 modern furniture 6 cold water  
3 bad news 5 brown bread 7 space travel

54.3 2 is / was 3 is / was 4 is; was 5 is / was 6 is / was

- 54.4 2 Where can I get some **information** about your country?  
3 Let me give you **some** advice.  
4 Cook **this** spaghetti for ten minutes.  
5 Can I have **some** bread, please?  
6 We need to buy some new **furniture**.  
7 The east of the country usually has better weather than the west. [NOT a better weather]  
8 I must find **some** new accommodation soon.

## Unit 55

### 55.1 Possible answers:

- 2 very bad / terrible / awful / dreadful
- 3 terrible / awful / dreadful
- 4 excellent / great / wonderful
- 5 awful / horrible
- 6 wonderful / lovely
- 7 bad
- 8 wonderful / lovely

### 55.2 Possible answers:

- 2 Oh, how awful!
- 3 That's a lovely idea! / Yes, great!
- 4 Yes, there's the Ritz. It's an excellent restaurant.
- 5 They're wonderful!
- 6 Yes, that's perfect!

55.3 2 e 3 d 4 a 5 b

55.4

good	bad
brilliant marvellous fine	dreadful nasty

55.5 *Possible answers:*

brilliant idea / scientist      nasty surprise / smell  
marvellous weather / food      fine weather / day

## Unit 56

56.1 2 horrible    3 kind    4 naughty    5 selfish

56.2 2 wonderful    3 lovely    4 difficult    5 nice    6 easy-going    7 horrible

56.3 *Your own answers*

56.4 2 of    3 to    4 of

## Unit 57

57.1 2 d This bicycle belongs to the hotel.  
3 h The children thanked their aunt for the money.  
4 g Sally is listening to her MP3 player.  
5 a He apologised for his mistake.  
6 e Let me pay for our tickets.  
7 b Hamid is thinking about the holidays.  
8 f Over 100 people came to the football match.

57.2 2 after people    4 forward to my party    6 for a new one    8 after the children  
3 for them    5 at me    7 forward to it

57.3 2 at    3 to    4 in    5 to    6 of    7 about    8 to

57.4 3 Hiroshi wasn't used to eating British food.    5 He was used to expensive shops.  
4 He was used to traffic jams.    6 He wasn't used to British money.

57.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I was good at languages and bad at PE.    5 I like listening to folk music.  
2 I usually ask for a black coffee.    6 I am looking forward to my holiday.  
3 I am proud of my family.    7 I belong to a tennis club.  
4 I am afraid of going to the dentist.    8 I am used to eating lots of different kinds of food.

## Unit 58

58.1 2 rewrite / redo    3 informal    4 unhappy    5 half-price    6 unsafe

58.2 *Possible answers:*

2 An ex-president is giving a lecture here tomorrow.    4 It's impossible to read his handwriting.  
3 This work is not very good. Please redo it.    5 Pre-school children learn by playing.

- 58.3** 2 nerves before an exam  
 3 a wrong answer, an answer that is not correct  
 4 a book that has not been read  
 5 to tell a story again  
 6 a brother with one parent the same (for example, perhaps with the same mother but not the same father)  
 7 a letter that is not finished  
 8 a drink with no alcohol in it (for example, fruit juice, cola)  
 9 to read a book again  
 10 to send an email again

- 58.4** 2 uncomfortable 3 impolite 4 unpleasant 5 unattractive

### Follow-up

*Possible answers:*

in: This is an incomplete answer – you need to finish it.

im: I thought the question he asked me was very impolite.

non: I want to buy a non-stick pan.

pre: Would you like to have a pre-lunch drink?

re: We're going to repaint this room next week.

un: My daughter's room is always very untidy.

## Unit 59

- 59.1** 2 instructor 3 swimmer 4 happily 5 calculator 6 useful

**59.2** *Possible answers:*

You may be able to think of some other possible combinations.

2 fast worker / car / swimmer

3 beautiful beach / weather / car / book / smile / picture

4 sandy beach

5 sunny weather / smile

6 hard worker

7 useful idea / book

8 endless fun

9 useless idea / book (*Note:* You can also say 'I'm a useless swimmer'. It is typical of spoken rather than written English and means 'I am no good at swimming'.)

- 59.3** 2 badly 3 helpful 4 kindness 5 careless 6 windy 7 easily 8 builder

- 59.4** 2 a person who travels 7 the opposite of doing something well  
 3 the opposite of fast 8 a thing for opening tins  
 4 with lots of hope 9 a person who plays football  
 5 weather when it is raining 10 weather when there is a lot of snow  
 6 it doesn't hurt

## Unit 60

- 60.1** 2 lose 3 felt 4 cooker 5 fell 6 quite 7 loose 8 cook

- 60.2** 2 loose – *juice* 3 quite – *right* 4 quiet – *higher*

- 60.3** 2 He/She checks it. 4 Good afternoon. 6 Can you lend me £1?  
 3 Can I borrow your camera? 5 They wait for the bus. 7 Please be quiet.

**60.4** *Possible answers:*

1 I am expecting my brother at 5.30. (= He said he would come at 5.30.)

2 I hope to go on holiday to Spain. (= I really want to go to Spain.)

3 Sometimes I borrow books and CDs.

4 Yes, but only to my best friend!

# Phonemic symbols

## Vowel sounds

<i>Symbol</i>	<i>Examples</i>
/i:/	sleep me
/i/	happy recipe
/ɪ/	pin dinner
/ʊ/	foot could pull
/u:/	do shoe through
/e/	red head said
/ə/	arrive father colour
/ɜ:/	turn bird work
/ɔ:/	sort thought walk
/æ/	cat black
/ʌ/	sun enough wonder
/ɒ/	got watch sock
/ɑ:/	part heart laugh
/eɪ/	name late aim
/aɪ/	my idea time
/ɔɪ/	boy noise
/eə/	pair where bear
/ɪə/	hear beer
/əʊ/	go home show
/aʊ/	out cow
/ʊə/	pure fewer

## Consonant sounds

<i>Symbol</i>	<i>Examples</i>
/p/	put
/b/	book
/t/	take
/d/	dog
/k/	car kick
/g/	go guarantee
/tʃ/	catch church
/dʒ/	age lounge
/f/	for cough photograph
/v/	love vehicle
/θ/	thick path
/ð/	this mother
/s/	since rice
/z/	zoo houses
/ʃ/	shop sugar machine
/ʒ/	pleasure usual vision
/h/	hear hotel
/m/	make
/n/	name now know
/ŋ/	bring
/l/	look while
/r/	road
/j/	young
/w/	wear

<sup>1</sup> This shows that the next syllable is the one with the stress.

<sup>2</sup> This is used when some longer words have a second stress, less strong than on the main stressed syllable.

# Index

The numbers in the Index are **Unit** numbers not page numbers. The pronunciation provided is for standard British English.

- about ə'baʊt 23  
abroad ə'brɔ:d 52  
absolutely ,æbsə'lʊ:tli 9  
accommodation  
ə,kɒmə'deɪʃən 54  
action 'æksjən 22  
actually 'æktʃuəli 9  
address ə'dres 16  
adjective 'ædʒɪktɪv 48  
adverb 'ædvɜ:b 48  
advert 'ædvɜ:t 33  
advertisement  
əd'vɜ:tɪsmənt 33  
advice əd'vaɪs 54  
aeroplane 'eərəpleɪn 30  
afraid of ə'freɪd əv 57  
Africa 'æfrɪkə 25  
after 'ɑ:ftə 49  
afternoon ,ɑ:ftə'nu:n 50,  
60  
age eɪdʒ 5  
ago ə'gəʊ 51  
agree ə'gri: 9  
air eə 54  
air pollution  
eə pə'lju:ʃən 35  
alarm clock ə'lɑ:m klɒk 12  
alcohol 'ælkəhɒl 20  
also 'ɔ:lsoʊ 49  
always 'ɔ:lweɪz 51  
America ə'merɪkə 25  
American ə'merɪkən 25  
American football  
ə'merɪkən 'fʊtbɔ:l 21  
and ænd 49  
angry 'æŋgri 7  
animal 'ænɪməl 29  
answer 'ɑ:nsə 46, 48  
Antarctica æn'tɑ:ktɪkə 25  
anyway 'eniweɪ 9  
apologise ə'pɒlədʒaɪz 34  
apologise for ə'pɒlədʒaɪz  
fɔ: 57  
apple 'æpəl 10, 54  
apple pie 'æpəl paɪ 20  
April 'eɪprəl 50  
Arabic 'ærəbɪk 25  
Argentina ,ɑ:dʒən'ti:nə 25  
Argentinian ,ɑ:dʒən'tɪniən  
25  
arm ɑ:m 3  
armchair 'ɑ:mtʃeə 13  
around ə'raʊnd 9  
arrest ə'rest 32  
arrive ə'raɪv 30  
arrive at ə'raɪv æt 47  
arrive in ə'raɪv ɪn 47  
art ɑ:t 15  
as well æz wel 49  
Asia 'eɪzə 25  
ask ɑ:sk 46  
ask (someone) the time  
ɑ:sk ðə taɪm 46  
ask (someone) the way  
ɑ:sk ðə weɪ 46  
ask for ɑ:sk fɔ: 46, 57  
ask someone to do  
something ɑ:sk 'sʌmwʌn  
tu: du: 'sʌmθɪŋ 46  
aspirin 'æsprɪn 6  
asthma 'æsθmə 6  
at æt 52  
at home æt həʊm 52  
at the moment æt ðə  
'məʊmənt 51  
attack ə'tæk 32  
August 'ɔ:gəst 50  
aunt ɑ:nt 1  
Australasia ,ɒstrə'leɪzə 25  
Australia ɒs'treɪliə 25  
Australian ɒs'treɪliən 25  
autumn 'ɔ:təm 50  
average-looking 'ævri:dʒ  
'ləkɪŋ 5  
away ə'weɪ 52  
awful 'ɔ:fəl 55  
baby 'beɪbi 2  
back bæk 3, 52  
bacon 'beɪkən 29  
bad bæd 53, 55, 56  
bad at bæd æt 57  
bad mood bæd mu:d 34  
badly 'bædli 53  
badminton 'bædmɪntən 21  
bag bæɡ 4, 18  
baker(s) 'beɪkə 18  
ball game bɔ:l ɡeɪm 21  
banana bə'nɑ:nə 10  
band bænd 24  
bank bæŋk 27  
bank clerk bæŋk klɑ:k 14  
bank holiday bæŋk 'hɒlədeɪ  
31  
bar bɑ: 20  
baseball 'beɪsbɔ:l 21  
basement 'beɪsmənt 18  
basin 'beɪsən 12  
basketball 'bɑ:skɪtbɔ:l 21  
bathroom 'bɑ:θrʊm 12, 19  
be born bi: bɔ:n 2  
be careful bi: 'keəfəl 9  
be used to bi: ju:zt tə 57  
beans bi:nz 10, 20  
beard brəd 5  
beautiful 'bjʊ:tɪfəl 5, 59  
beauty 'bjʊ:ti 18  
beauty salon 'bjʊ:ti 'sælɒn  
14  
because bi:'kɒz 49  
bed bed 12  
bedroom 'bedrʊm 12  
bedside lamp 'bedsaɪd  
læmp 12  
bedside table 'bedsaɪd  
'teɪbəl 12  
beef bi:f 29  
beer brə 10  
before bi:'fɔ: 49  
beginning bi:'ɡɪnɪŋ 52  
belong to bi:'lɒŋ tə 57  
belt belt 4  
bike baɪk 30  
bill bɪl 19  
bin bɪn 11  
biology baɪ'ɒlədʒi 15  
bird bɜ:d 29  
birth bɜ:θ 2  
birthday 'bɜ:θdeɪ 2  
Bless you bles ju: 8  
blonde blɒnd 5  
blood blʌd 3  
blue blu: 5  
board bɔ:d 15  
board pen bɔ:d pen 15  
board rubber 'bɔ:d 'rʌbə  
155



boarding card	'bɔ:diŋ	Can you tell me the way ...?	China	'tʃaɪnə	25
	kɑ:d 30	kən ju: tel mi: ðə weɪ	Chinese	tʃaɪ'ni:z	25
boat	bəʊt 30	kən't stænd	chips	tʃɪps	10
body	'bɒdi 3	Canada	chocolate	'tʃɒklət	20
bonfire	'bɒnfaraɪ 31	Canadian	cholera	'kɒləərə	6
Bonfire Night	'bɒnfaraɪ naɪt	cancer	chopsticks	'tʃɒpstɪks	11
	31	car	Christmas	'krɪsməs	31
book	bʊk 13, 23, 30	car crash	Christmas tree	'krɪsməs	
bookshelf (bookshelves)	'bʊkʃelf 13	car park	tri:	31	
bookshop	'bʊkʃɒp 18	car theft	cinema	'sɪnəmə	22
boots	bʊts 4	car thief	clarinet	'klærɪ'net	24
boring	'bɔ:riŋ 22	carpet	classical music	'klæsɪkəl	
born	bɔ:n 2	carrier bag	'mju:zɪk	24	
borrow	'bɒrəʊ 60	carrot(s)	clean	kli:n	12
bottom	'bɒtəm 52	carry	clean the house	kli:n ðə	
bowl	bəʊl 11	cartoon	haus	45	
brain	breɪn 3	cash	clean your teeth	kli:n jʊ:	
Brazil	brə'zɪl 25	cash desk	ti:θ	12	
bread	bred 10, 54	cash machine	climb	klaɪm	47
break into	breɪk 'ɪntə 32	27	close	kləʊz	13
breakfast	'breɪkfəst 19	cassette	closed	kləʊzd	18
bride	braɪd 2	cat	cloth	klɒθ	11
bridegroom	'braɪdgrʊm 2	catch	clothes	kləʊðz	4
bring	brɪŋ 42	CD	cloud	klaʊd	26
bring back	brɪŋ bæɪk 42	CD-ROM	cloudy	'klaʊdi	26
British	'brɪtɪʃ 25	cello	coach	kəʊtʃ	17
broken	'brəʊkən 34	century	coach tour	kəʊtʃ tʊə	17
brother	'brʌðə 1	chair	coat	kəʊt	4
brown	braʊn 5	change	code	kəʊd	19
burger	'bɜ:gə 20	change money	coffee	'kɒfi	10, 36, 54
burglar	'bɜ:glə 32	'mʌni 27	coffee machine	'kɒfi mə'ʃi:n	
burglary	'bɜ:gləri 32	channel	34		
bus	bʌs 27, 30	chat	coffee maker	'kɒfi 'meɪkə	
bus station	bʌs 'steɪʃən 27	check	11		
but	bʌt 49	check in	coffee table	'kɒfi 'teɪbəl	13
butcher(s)	'bʊtʃə 18	check in online	cold	kəʊld	6, 7, 26
butter	'bʌtə 54	check in	Colombian	kə'lɒmbiən	25
by bus	baɪ bʌs 17, 45	check out	colour	'kʌlə	18
by car	baɪ kɑ: 17, 45	check out	comb	kəʊm	12
by ferry	baɪ 'feri 17	Cheers	come	kʌm	23, 40
by plane	baɪ pleɪn 17	cheese	come along	kʌm ə'lɒŋ	40
by train	baɪ treɪn 17, 45	chemist(s)	come and see me	kʌm ənd	
café	'kæfeɪ 20	chemistry	si: mi:	40	
calculator	'kælkjələteɪə 59	cheque	come back	kʌm bæɪk	40
calf	kɑ:f 29	chest	come back from	kʌm bæɪk	
call	kɔ:l 16	chest of drawers	fɾɒm	40	
call a friend	kɔ:l ə frend	chick	come from	kʌm fɾɒm	40
	45	chicken	come home	kʌm həʊm	40,
call after	kɔ:l 'ɑ:ftə 2	chicken tikka masala	45		
call back	kɔ:l bæɪk 16	'tɪkə mə'sɑ:lə 31	come in	kʌm ɪn	40
camera	'kæmərə 17	children	come into	kʌm 'ɪntə	40
camping	'kæmpɪŋ 17	children's department	come on	kʌm ɒn	44
Can I help with ...?	kən aɪ	'tʃɪldrənz dɪ'pɑ:tmənt 18	come out	kʌm aʊt	40
help with	hɛlp wɪð 11		come to	kʌm tə	57
			comedy	'kɒmədi	22

comic 'kɒmɪk 23	department store dɪ'pɑ:tmənt stɔ: 18	drink drɪŋk 10, 20, 36
computer kəm'pjʊ:tə 15, 16, 33, 34	desk desk 15	drive draɪv 47
computer game kəm'pjʊ:tə geɪm 23	dessert dɪ'zɜ:t 20	drug dealer drʌg 'di:lə 32
concert 'kɒnsət 24	dialogue 'daɪələg 48	drug dealing drʌg 'di:lɪŋ 32
congratulations kən,grætʃu'leɪʃənz 8, 46	die daɪ 2, 34	drugs drʌgz 32
conjunction kən'dʒʌŋkʃən 48	diet daɪət 6	drums drʌmz 24
conservation area ,kɒnsə'veɪʃən 'eəriə 28	difficult 'dɪfɪkəlt 56	dry draɪ 11, 26
continent 'kɒntɪnənt 25	dinner 'dɪnə 23	DVD ,di:vi:'di: 22, 23
control kən'trəʊl 60	direct dɪ'rekt 30	DVD player ,di:vi:'di: 'pleɪə 15
cook kʊk 11, 60	director dɪ'rektə 22	ear ɪə 3
cooker 'kʊkə 11, 59, 60	disaster dɪ'zɑ:stə 35	earthquake 'ɜ:θkweɪk 35
cooking 'kʊkɪŋ 23	dishwasher 'dɪʃ,wɒʃə 11	Easter 'ɪstə 31
cost kɒst 18	divorced dɪ'vɔ:st 2	Easter eggs 'ɪ:stə egz 31
cottage 'kɒtɪdʒ 28	do du: 14, 21, 23, 38	easy-going 'i:zi 'gəʊɪŋ 56
Could I have the bill? kʊd aɪ hæv ðə bɪl 20	do a course du: ə kɔ:s 15	egg eg 29
countable 'kaʊntəbəl 54	do an exam du: ən ɪg'zæm 15	Egypt 'i:dʒɪpt 25
country 'kʌntri 25, 28	do business with du: 'bɪznɪs wɪð 38	Egyptian ɪ'dʒɪpjən 25
country road 'kʌntri rəʊd 28	do homework du: 'həʊmwɜ:k 15, 38	elderly 'eldəli 5
countryside 'kʌntrɪsaɪd 28	do some exercise(s) du: sʌm 'eksəsaɪz 38	electricals ɪ'lektɪkəlz 18
course kɔ:s 20	do the gardening du: ðə 'gɑ:dənɪŋ 38	elephant 'elɪfənt 29
court kɔ:t 21, 32	do the housework du: ðə 'haʊswɜ:k 38	else els 9
cousin 'kʌzən 1	do the washing du: ðə 'wɒʃɪŋ 38	email 'i:meɪl 16
cow kaʊ 29	do the washing-up du: ðə 'wɒʃɪŋ ʌp 38	end end 52
crash kræʃ 34	Do you come from ...? du: ju: kʌm frəm 1	endless 'endləs 59
credit card 'kredɪt kɑ:d 18	Do you have any ...? du: ju: hæv 'eni 29	engineer ,endʒɪ'nɪə 14
crime kraɪm 32	Do you play ...? du: ju: pleɪ 21	English 'ɪŋɡlɪʃ 15, 25
criminal 'krɪmɪnəl 32	do your best du: jɔ: best 38	enjoy ɪn'dʒɔɪ 17, 22
crowded 'kraʊdɪd 35	doctor 'dɒktə 6, 14	entrance 'entrəns 27
cup kʌp 11	documentary ,dɒkjə'mentəri 33	envelope 'envələʊp 16
cupboard 'kʌbəd 11	dog dɒg 29	Europe 'jʊərəp 25
currency 'kʌrənsɪ 17	double room 'dʌbəl ru:m 19	even 'i:vən 49
curry 'kʌri 20, 31	download ,daʊn'ləʊd 23, 24	evening 'i:vɪŋ 50, 60
curtain(s) 'kɜ:tən 13	downstairs ,daʊn'steəz 12	every 'evri 12
customs 'kʌstəmz 30	drawers drɔ:z 12	everywhere 'evriweə 52
cut kʌt 34	drawing pin 'drɔ:ɪŋ pɪn 15	exam ɪg'zæm 15
dance da:ns 47	dreadful 'dredfəl 55	excellent 'eksələnt 55
dark dɑ:k 5	dress dres 4	exchange ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ 19
date deɪt 16	dressing table 'dresɪŋ 'teɪbəl 12	excuse me ɪk'skju:z mi: 8, 27
daughter 'dɔ:tə 1		exercise 'eksəsaɪz 6
day deɪ 50		exit 'eksɪt 27
dead ded 2		expect ɪk'spekt 60
death deθ 2		ex-president eks 'prezɪdənt 58
December dɪ'sembə 50		ex-wife eks waɪf 58
degree dɪ'ɡri: 15		eye aɪ 3
degrees dɪ'ɡri:z 26		face feɪs 3, 5
delicious dɪ'lɪʃəs 20		factory 'fæktəri 14
dentist 'dentɪst 6		fail an exam feɪl ən ɪg'zæm 15
depart dɪ'pɑ:t 30		fair feə 5
		fall fɔ:l 47, 60

fall asleep	fɔ:l ə'sli:p	12	forest fire	'fɔ:rist faə	35	go in	gəʊ ɪn	37
family	'fæmli	1	fork	fɔ:k	11	go into	gəʊ 'ɪntə	37
farm	fɑ:m	28	form	fɔ:m	19	go off	gəʊ ɒf	44
farm animal	fɑ:m 'æniməl		fortnight	'fɔ:tnaɪt	50	go on	gəʊ ɒn	44
	29		fourth	fɔ:θ	18	go out of	gəʊ aʊt ɒv	37
farmer	'fɑ:mə	14, 28	freezer	'fri:zə	11	go shopping	gəʊ 'ʃɒpɪŋ	37
fast	fɑ:st	53	Friday	'fraɪdeɪ	50	go sightseeing	gəʊ 'saɪtsi:ŋ	37
fast food	fɑ:st fu:d	10	fridge	'frɪdʒ	11	go skiing	gəʊ 'ski:ŋ	37
fast food restaurant	fɑ:st fu:d 'restɹɒn	20	friend	'frend	23	go swimming	gəʊ 'swɪmɪŋ	37
fat	fæt	5	friendly	'frendli	53	go through	gəʊ θru:	30
father	'fɑ:ðə	1	front	'frʌnt	52	go to bed	gəʊ tə bed	45
favourite	'feɪvərɪt	21, 33	fruit	'fru:t	10	go to the bathroom	gəʊ tə ðə 'bɑ:θrʊm	45
February	'februəri	50	fruit juice	'fru:t dʒu:s	10	go to work	gəʊ tə wɜ:k	45
feed	fi:d	29	fruit salad	'fru:t 'sæləd	20	go up	gəʊ ʌp	37
feel	fi:l	6, 60	frying pan	'fraɪŋ pæn	11	goat	gəʊt	29
feelings	'fi:lɪŋz	7	funeral	'fju:nərəl	2	goatskin	'gəʊtskɪn	29
feet	fi:t	3	furniture	'fɜ:nɪtʃə	18, 54	going to	'gəʊɪŋ tu:	37
ferry	'feri	17	future	'fju:tʃə	51	good	gʊd	53, 55, 56
field	'fi:ld	28	game	geɪm	36	good afternoon	gʊd ,ɑ:ftə'nu:n	8
fill in a form	fil ɪn ə fɔ:m	19	gardening	'gɑ:dənɪŋ	23	good at	gʊd æt	57
fill up with	fil ʌp wɪð	30	garlic	'gɑ:lɪk	10	good evening	gʊd 'i:vnɪŋ	8
film	film	22	geography	dʒɪ'ɒgrəfi	15	good for somebody	gʊd fə 'sʌmbədi	6
film star	film stɑ:	22	German	'dʒɜ:mən	25	good luck	gʊd lʌk	8
fine	fain	6, 32	Germany	'dʒɜ:məni	25	good morning	gʊd'mɔ:ɪnɪŋ	8
finger	'fɪŋgə	3	get	get	43	goodbye	gʊd'baɪ	8, 46
Finnish	'fɪnɪʃ	25	get a degree	get ə dɪ'grɪ:	15	good-looking	gʊd'lʊkɪŋ	5
fireworks	'faɪəwɜ:kz	31	get back	get bæk	43	goodnight	gʊd'nɑɪt	8
first floor	'fɜ:st flɔ:	18	get dressed	get drest	4	granddaughter	'græn,dɔ:tə	1
fish	fɪʃ	10, 20, 29	get home	get hæʊm	43	grandfather	'græn,fɑ:ðə	1
fish and chips	fɪʃ ənd tʃɪps	10, 20, 31	get married	get 'mæɪɪd	2, 43	grandmother	'græn,mʌðə	1
flight	flaɪt	17, 30	get off	get ɒf	44	grandparents	'græn,peərənts	1
flight attendant	flaɪt ə'tendənt	30	get on	get ɒn	44	grandson	'grænsʌn	1
flood	flʌd	35	get to	get tə	43	grape(s)	greɪp	10
floor	flɔ:	18	get undressed	get ʌn'drest	4	great	greɪt	55
flute	flu:t	24	get up	get ʌp	12, 44, 45	green	grɪ:n	5
flute-player	flu:t 'pleɪə	24	gift shop	gɪft ʃɒp	18	green beans	grɪ:n bi:nz	20
fly	flaɪ	17, 47	giraffe	dʒɪ'rɑ:f	29	greetings	'gri:tɪŋz	8
foal	fəʊl	29	give	gɪv	29	groom	gru:m	2
fog	fɒg	26	give a lift	gɪv ə lɪft	30	ground floor	graʊnd flɔ:	18
foggy	'fɒgi	26	glass	glɑ:s	11	grow flowers /		
folk music	fəʊk 'mju:zɪk	24	glasses	'glɑ:sɪz	4	vegetables	grəʊ fləʊəz /	
food	fu:d	10, 7, 18	global	'glɔ:bəl	35	'vedʒtəbəlz	23	
foot	fʊt	3	gloves	glʌvz	4	guilty	'gɪltɪ	32
football	'fʊtbɔ:l	21	go	gəʊ	12, 21, 22, 37, 40			
football hooligan	'fʊtbɔ:l 'hu:lɪgən	32	go by	gəʊ baɪ	37, 47			
football hooliganism	'fʊtbɔ:l 'hu:lɪgənɪzəm	32	go dancing	gəʊ 'da:ntsɪŋ	37			
forest	'fɔ:rist	28	go down	gəʊ daʊn	37			
			go fishing	gəʊ 'fɪʃɪŋ	37			
			go for a walk	gəʊ fɔ: ə wɜ:k	45			

guitar	ɡɪ'ta:	24	have a meal	hæv ə mi:l	36	home	həʊm	12, 23, 34, 52
hair	heə	3, 5, 29	have a meeting	hæv ə 'mi:tɪŋ	36	homeless	'həʊmləs	35
hairbrush	'heəbrʌʃ	12	have a moment	hæv ə 'məʊmənt	36	homework	'həʊmwɜ:k	15, 36
hairdresser(s)	'heə,dresə	14	have a party	hæv ə 'pɑ:ti	36	honeymoon	'hʌnɪmu:n	2
hairdryer	'heədraɪə	19	have a picnic	hæv ə 'pɪknɪk	28	hooligan	'hu:lɪɡən	32
half	hɑ:f	58	have a row with	hæv ə rau wɪð	34	hope	həʊp	7, 60
half-brother	'hɑ:f,bɾʌðə	58	have a shower	hæv ə ʃaʊə	45	horrible	'hɒrəbəl	55, 56
half-price	'hɑ:f'praɪs	58	have a word with	hæv ə wɜ:d wɪð	36	horror	'hɒrə	22
Halloween	'hæləʊ'i:n	31	have a word with	hæv ə wɜ:d wɪð	36	horse	hɔ:s	29
ham	hæm	29	have an exam	hæv ən ɪɡ'zæm	36	horse racing	'hɔ:s ,reɪsɪŋ	21
hamburger	'hæm,bɜ:ɡə	10	have breakfast	hæv 'brekfəst	36, 45	hospital	'hɒspɪtəl	14
hand	hænd	3	have coffee	hæv 'kɒfi	36	hot	hɒt	7, 26
handbag	'hænbæg	4	have dinner	hæv 'dɪnə	36	hot dog	hɒt dɒɡ	10
happily	'hæpɪli	59	have friends round	hæv frendz raʊnd	23	hotel	həʊ'tel	19
happiness	'hæpɪnəs	59	have got	hæv gɒt	36	hour	aʊə	50
happy	'hæpi	7, 56	have got ... on	hæv gɒt ɒn	4	Houses of Parliament	'haʊzɪz əv 'pɑ:ləmənt	31
happy about	'hæpi ə'baʊt	7, 57	have lunch	hæv lʌnʃ	36	How (awful)	haʊ	55
Happy Birthday	'hæpi 'bɜ:θdeɪ	8, 46	have the time	hæv ðə taɪm	36	How about ...?	haʊ ə'baʊt	7, 9
Happy Christmas	'hæpi 'krɪsməs	8	have to	hæv tu:	36	How are you?	haʊ ə ju:	6, 8
happy for	'hæpi fɔ:	7	Have you got any ...?	hæv ju: gɒt 'eni	1	How do I get to ...?	haʊ du: aɪ get tə	27
Happy New Year	'hæpi nju: jɪə	8, 46	hay fever	heɪ 'fi:və	6	How do you ...?	haʊ du: ju:	45
hat	hæt	4	head	hed	3, 5	How do you say ...?	haʊ du: ju: seɪ	46
hate	heit	7	headache	'hedek	6	How long does it take ...?	haʊ lɒŋ dəz ɪt teɪk	41
have	hæv	12, 20, 23, 36	headphones	'hedfəʊnz	23	How much ...?	haʊ mʌtʃ	19
have (your) hair cut	hæv heə kʌt	36	health	helθ	6	How often do you ...?	haʊ 'ɒfən də ju:	45
have a baby	hæv ə 'beɪbi	2	heart	hɑ:t	3	How would you like ...?	haʊ wʊd ju: laɪk	20
have a bad day	hæv ə bæd deɪ	34	heart attack	hɑ:t ə'tæk	6	hungry	'hʌŋɡri	7, 35
have a cold	hæv ə kəʊld	36	heavy	'hevi	5	hurricane	'hʌrɪkən	26, 35
have a cup of tea (coffee)	hæv ə kʌp əv ti:	20	height	haɪt	5	hurry up	'hʌrɪ ʌp	9
have a go	hæv ə ɡəʊ	36	helicopter	'helɪkɒptə	30	husband	'hʌzbænd	1
have a good journey	hæv ə ɡʊd 'dʒɜ:nɪ	36	hello	hel'əʊ	8, 46	I don't mind	aɪ dəʊnt maɪnd	9
have a good time	hæv ə ɡʊd taɪm	36	hen	hen	29	I'd like ...	aɪd laɪk	20
have a great time	hæv ə ɡreɪt taɪm	17	here	hɪə	52	I'll have ...	aɪl hæv	20
have a headache	hæv ə 'hedek	36	here is ...	hɪəz ɪz	19	ice cream	'aɪs'kri:m	36
have a healthy diet	hæv ə 'helθi daɪət	6	hi	haɪ	8	ICT (information communication technology)	'aɪsɪ'ti:	15
have a heart attack	hæv ə hɑ:t ə'tæk	6	hi-fi	'haɪfaɪ	13	if	ɪf	49
have a lesson	hæv ə 'lesən	36	hill	hɪl	28	ill	ɪl	2, 6, 7
have a look	hæv ə lʊk	36	hip	hɪp	3	illness	'ɪlnəs	6
			hire	haɪə	30	impossible	ɪm'pɒsəbəl	58
			history	'hɪstri	15			
			hobby	'hɒbi	23			
			holiday	'hɒlədeɪ	17			

- in **in** 22, 47, 52  
 in a bad mood **in ə bæd mu:d** 34  
 in a moment **in ə 'məʊmənt** 51  
 in advance **in əd'vɑ:ns** 30  
 India **'ɪndiə** 25  
 Indian **'ɪndiən** 25  
 informal **in'fɔ:məl** 58  
 information **ˌɪnfə'meɪʃən** 27, 54  
 innocent **'ɪnəsənt** 32  
 instructor **ɪn'strʌktə** 59  
 intelligent **ɪn'telɪdʒənt** 56  
 interested in **'ɪntrəstɪd ɪn** 57  
 Internet **'ɪntənət** 16, 23  
 interview **'ɪntəvjʊ:** 33  
 Irish **'aɪrɪʃ** 25  
 Is everything all right? **ɪz 'evriθɪŋ ɔ:l raɪt** 20  
 it doesn't matter **ɪt dʌznt 'mætə** 9  
 it takes (+ time) **ɪt teɪks** 41  
 It's ... here **ɪts hɪə** 16  
 It's a ... day **ɪts ə deɪ** 26  
 it's up to you **ɪts ʌp tə ju:** 9  
 Italian **ɪ'tæliən** 25  
 Italy **'ɪtəli** 25  
 jacket **'dʒækɪt** 4  
 January **'dʒænjuəri** 50  
 Japan **dʒə'pæn** 25  
 jazz **dʒæz** 24  
 jeans **dʒi:nz** 4  
 job **dʒɒb** 14  
 journalist **'dʒɜ:nəlɪst** 33  
 journey **'dʒɜ:ni** 30  
 judo **'dʒu:dəʊ** 21  
 July **dʒʊ'laɪ** 50  
 jump **dʒʌmp** 47  
 jumper **'dʒʌmpə** 4  
 June **dʒu:n** 50  
 karate **kə'rɑ:ti** 21  
 kayaking **'kaɪækɪŋ** 21  
 key **ki:** 19  
 keyboard **'ki:bɔ:d** 16  
 kid **kɪd** 29  
 kilo **'ki:ləʊ** 54  
 kind **kamnd** 56  
 king **kɪŋ** 31  
 kitchen **'kɪtʃɪn** 11  
 kitchen roll **'kɪtʃɪn rəʊl** 11  
 knee **ni:** 3  
 knife **naɪf** 11  
 lake **leɪk** 28  
 lamb **læm** 29  
 lamp **læmp** 13  
 land **lænd** 30  
 laptop **'læptɒp** 16  
 last **lɑ:st** 51  
 late for **leɪt fə** 34  
 law **lɔ:** 32  
 leap year **li:p jɪə** 50  
 learn **lɜ:n** 15, 24  
 leather **'leðə** 29  
 leave **li:v** 30  
 left **left** 27, 52  
 leg **leg** 3  
 lend **lend** 60  
 let's **lets** 9  
 letter **'letə** 16  
 letter box **'letə bɒks** 16  
 letters **'letəz** 16  
 librarian **laɪ'breəriən** 14  
 library **'laɪbrəri** 27  
 lift **lɪft** 19  
 light **laɪt** 12, 13  
 light switch **laɪt swɪtʃ** 13  
 lightning **'laɪtnɪŋ** 26  
 like **laɪk** 7, 21, 49  
 lion **laɪən** 29  
 lip **lɪp** 3  
 lipstick **'lɪpstɪk** 3  
 listen (to) **'lɪsən** 13, 23, 24, 45  
 listen to **'lɪsən tə** 57  
 litre **'lɪtə** 54  
 living room **'lɪvɪŋ ru:m** 13  
 loaf **ləʊf** 54  
 local **'ləʊkəl** 17  
 long **lɒŋ** 5  
 look after **lʊk 'ɑ:ftə** 57  
 look at **lʊk æt** 57  
 look for **lʊk fɔ:** 27, 34, 57  
 look forward to **lʊk 'fɔ:wəd tə** 57  
 look like **lʊk laɪk** 5  
 look out **lʊk aʊt** 9  
 loose **lu:s** 60  
 lose **lu:z** 34, 60  
 loud **laʊd** 53  
 loudly **'laʊdli** 53  
 love **lʌv** 7, 22  
 lovely **'lʌvli** 55, 56  
 luggage **'lʌɡɪdʒ** 17, 19, 30, 54  
 magazine **ˌmæɡə'zi:n** 23, 33  
 main course **meɪn kɔ:s** 20  
 make **meɪk** 12  
 make a (phone) call **meɪk ə kɔ:l** 16  
 make a choice **meɪk ə tʃɔ:s** 39  
 make a film **meɪk ə fɪlm** 39  
 make a mess **meɪk ə mes** 39  
 make a mistake **meɪk ə mɪ'steɪk** 39  
 make a noise **meɪk ə nɔɪz** 39  
 make a photocopy **meɪk ə 'fəʊtə,kɒpi** 39  
 make a video **meɪk ə 'vɪdiəʊ** 39  
 make an appointment **meɪk ən ə'pɔɪntmənt** 39  
 make breakfast **meɪk 'brekfəst** 39  
 make dinner **meɪk 'dɪnə** 39, 45  
 make hot chocolate **meɪk hɒt 'tʃɒklət** 39  
 make lunch **meɪk lʌnʃ** 39  
 make me (feel) **meɪk mi:** 39  
 make my bed **meɪk maɪ bed** 39  
 make some coffee **meɪk səm 'kɒfi** 39  
 make some tea **meɪk səm ti:** 39  
 malaria **mə'leəriə** 6  
 man-made **ˌmæn'meɪd** 35  
 manner **'mænə** 53  
 map **mæp** 30  
 March **mɑ:tʃ** 50  
 marriage **'mærɪdʒ** 2  
 married **'mærɪd** 2  
 maths **mæθs** 15  
 May **meɪ** 50  
 meal **mi:l** 20  
 meat **mi:t** 10, 29  
 mechanic **mɪ'kænɪk** 14  
 media **'mi:diə** 33  
 medium **'mi:diəm** 5, 20  
 memory stick **'meməri stɪk** 16

men's clothes	<b>menz</b>	music	'mju:zɪk	15, 24	nursery school	'nɜ:sri
	kləʊðz	musical	'mju:zɪkəl	22, 24		sku:l
mend	<b>mend</b>	musical instruments	'mju:zɪkəl		o'clock	əʊ'klɒk
menu	'menju:		'ɪntstrəmənts	24	occasionally	ə'keɪʒənli
Merry Christmas	'meri	musician	mju:'zɪʃən	24	October	ɒk'təʊbə
	'krɪsməs	nail	neɪl	3	office	'ɒfɪs
message	'mesɪdʒ	national park	'næʃnəl pɑ:k	28	often	'ɒfən
microwave	'maɪkrəweɪv	natural disaster	'nætʃrəl		Oh dear	əʊ dɪə
middle	'mɪdəl		dɪ'zɑ:stə	35	OHP (overhead projector)	əʊertʃ'pi:
middle-aged	'mɪdəl'eɪdʒd	nature	'neɪtʃə	28, 33	old	əʊld
milk	<b>mɪlk</b>	naughty	'nɑ:ti	56	on	ɒn
mineral water	'mɪnərəl	neck	nek	3	on strike	ɒn streɪk
	'wɔ:tə	negative	'negətɪv	56	on the left	ɒn ðə left
mini-bar	'mɪni bɑ:	nephew	'nefju:	1	on the right	ɒn ðə raɪt
minus	'maɪnəs	never	'nevə	51	once	wʌns
minute	mɪnɪt	new potato(es)	nju:		onion	'ʌŋjən
mirror	'mɪrə		pə'tetəʊ	20	online	ɒn'lain
miss	mɪs	New Year's Day	nju: jɪəz		online check-in	ɒn'lain tʃek
mixed	mɪkst		deɪ	31		ɪn
mobile	'məʊbaɪl	New Year's Eve	nju: jɪəz		only	'əʊnli
mobile device	'məʊbaɪl		ɪv	31	only child	'əʊnli tʃaɪld
	dɪ'vaɪs	New Zealand	ˌnju: 'zi:lənd	25	open	'əʊpən
modern languages	'mɒdən				opera	'ɒpərə
	'læŋgwɪdʒɪz	news	nju:z	33, 54	or	ɔ:
moment	'məʊmənt	newsagent(s)	'nju:z,eɪdʒənt	18	orange	'ɒrɪndʒ
Monday	'mʌndeɪ	newspaper	'nju:z,peɪpə	23, 33	orchestra	'ɔ:kɪstrə
money	'mʌni				order	'ɔ:də
monkey	'mʌŋki	next	nekst	51	out	aʊt
month	mʌnθ	nice	nais	55, 56	out of order	aʊt əv 'ɔ:də
mood	mu:d	niece	ni:s	1		27, 34
morning	'mɔ:nɪŋ	night	naɪt	60	outside line	ˌaʊt'saɪd laɪn
Moroccan	mə'rɒkən	nightlife	'naɪtlaɪf	17		19
Morocco	mə'rɒkəʊ	no smoking	nəʊ 'sməʊkɪŋ	27	oven	'ʌvən
mosquito	mɒs'kɪtəʊ	non-smoking	nɒn 'sməʊkɪŋ	58	over there	'əʊvə ðeə
mother	'mʌðə				overweight	'əʊvəweɪt
motor racing	'məʊtə	normally	'nɔ:məli	12, 45	package holiday	'pækɪdʒ
	'reɪsɪŋ	nose	nəʊz	3		'hɒlədeɪ
motorbike	'məʊtəbaɪk	not too bad	nɒt tu: bæd	8	pain	peɪn
motorcycle	'məʊtə,sʌɪkəl	note	nəʊt	18	pair of trousers / shorts /	
	30	notebook	'nəʊtbʊk	15	glasses	peər əv 'traʊzəz /
mountain	'maʊntɪn	nothing	'nʌθɪŋ	23		ʃɔ:ts / 'glɑ:sɪz
mouse	maʊs	noticeboard	'nəʊtɪsbɔ:d	15	Pakistan	ˌpɑ:kɪ'stɑ:n
moustache	mə'stɑ:ʃ	noun	naʊn	48	Pakistani	ˌpɑ:kɪ'stɑ:ni
mouth	maʊθ	novel	'nɒvəl	23	paper	'peɪpə
move	mu:v	November	nə'vembə	50	paragraph	'pærəgrɑ:f
MP3 player	em'pi:'θri:	now	naʊ	51	parents	'peərənts
	'pleɪə	now and then	naʊ ənd ðen	51	park	pɑ:k
mug	mʌg	number	'nʌmbə	27	parrot	'pærət
mugger	'mʌgə	nurse	nɜ:s	14	pass	pɑ:s
mugging	'mʌgɪŋ				pass an exam	pɑ:s ən
murder	'mɜ:də					ɪg'zæm
murderer	'mɜ:dərə				passport	'pɑ:spɔ:t
mushroom(s)	'mʌʃrʊm					17, 30
	20				past	pɑ:st
						51

pasta 'pæstə 10	plural 'pluərəl 48	railway station 'reɪlweɪ 'steɪʃən 27
path pɑːθ 28	police pə'liːs 32	rain reɪn 26
pay peɪ 18, 32	police officer pə'liːs 'ɒfɪsə 14	rainy 'reɪni 26
pay for peɪ fɔː 57	Polish 'pəʊlɪʃ 25	rare reə 20
PE (physical education) 'piːiː 15	polluted pə'luːtɪd 35	rarely 'reəli 51
pea(s) piː 10	pollution pə'luːʃən 35	razor 'reɪzə 12
pear peə 10	pool puːl 21	read riːd 13, 15, 23, 33
pedestrian area pɪ'destriən 'eəriə 27	poor pɔː 35	ready to order 'redi tə 'ɔːdə 20
pen pen 15	pop music pɒp 'mjuːzɪk 24	reality TV ri'æləti 'tiːviː 33
pencil 'pensəl 15	pork pɔːk 29	really 'riəli 9
pencil sharpener 'pensəl 'ʃɑːpənə 15	position pə'zɪʃən 52	receipt ri'siːt 18
pepper 'pepə 10	positive 'pɒzətɪv 56	recently 'riːsntli 51
perfect 'pɜːfɪkt 55	post pəʊst 16, 27	reception ri'sepʃən 19
Peru pə'ruː 25	post office pəʊst 'ɒfɪs 18, 27	redo 'riːduː 58
Peruvian pə'ruːviən 25	postcard 'pəʊskɑːd 17	relations ri'leɪʃənz 1
pet pet 29	potato(es) pə'teɪtəʊ 10, 20	relatives 'relətɪvz 1
petrol 'petrəl 30	prefer prɪ'fɜː 7	relax ri'læks 6, 13
phone fəʊn 13, 16, 19, 23	pre-heat priː hiːt 58	remote control ri'məʊt kən'trəʊl 13
phone a friend fəʊn ə frend 45	preposition ,prepə'zɪʃən 48	repair ri'peə 34
phone box fəʊn bɒks 16	pre-school priː skuːl 58	reply ri'plai 46
phone number fəʊn 'nʌmbə 16	present 'prezənt 51	reporter ri'pɔːtə 33
photo 'fəʊtəʊ 41	pretty 'prɪti 5	reservation ,rezə'veɪʃən 19
photograph 'fəʊtəgrɑːf 41	primary school 'praɪməri skuːl 31	reserve ri'zɜːv 30
phrase freɪz 48	Prime Minister praɪm 'mɪnɪstə 31	restaurant 'restrɒn 14, 18, 20
phrasebook 'freɪzbʊk 17	prison 'prɪzən 32	restaurant car 'restrɒn kɑː 30
physics 'fɪzɪks 15	private school 'praɪvət skuːl 31	return ticket ri'tɜːn 'tɪkɪt 30
pianist 'piːənɪst 24	problem 'prɒbləm 34, 35	rewrite 'riːraɪt 58
piano pi'ænəʊ 24	programme 'prəʊgræm 23, 33	rice raɪs 10, 54
picture 'pɪktʃə 13	pronoun 'prəʊnəʊn 48	ride raɪd 47
piece of paper piːs əv 'peɪpə 15	proud of praʊd əv 57	right raɪt 27, 52, 53
pig piɡ 29	pub pʌb 20	ring rɪŋ 4
piglet 'pɪɡlət 29	pull pʊl 18	river 'rɪvə 28
pineapple 'paɪnæpəl 10	push pʊʃ 18	road rəʊd 27
pitch pɪtʃ 21	put ... on pʊt ɒn 4	roast beef rəʊst biːf 31
pizza 'pɪtsə 10	put on pʊt ɒn 34, 44	roast potatoes rəʊst pə'teɪtəʊz 31
place pleɪs 20	pyjamas pɪ'dʒɑːməz 4, 12	rob rɒb 32
plane pleɪn 17, 30	queen kwɪn 31	robber 'rɒbə 32
plaster 'plɑːstə 34	question 'kwestʃən 48	robbery 'rɒbəri 32
plate pleɪt 11, 54	quickly 'kwɪkli 59	rock rɒk 24
play pleɪ 21, 22, 23	quiet kwaiət 53, 60	romantic rə'mæntɪk 22
play a musical instrument pleɪ ə 'mjuːzɪkəl 'ɪnstrəmənt 24	quietly 'kwaiətli 53	room service 'ruːm ,sɜːvɪs 19
please plɪz 8, 46	quite kwɑɪt 60	room with a view ruːm wɪð ə vjuː 19
please do not walk on the grass plɪz duː nɒt wɔːk ɒn ðə grɑːs 27	rabbit 'ræbɪt 29	routine ruː'tiːn 12
	radio 'reɪdiəʊ 12, 13, 23, 33	

row **raʊ** 34  
 royal family **'rɔɪəl 'fæməli**  
 31  
 rubber **'rʌbə** 15  
 rucksack **'rʌksæk** 17  
 rug **rʌɡ** 13  
 rugby **'rʌɡbi** 21  
 ruler **'ru:lə** 15  
 run **rʌn** 47  
 running **'rʌnɪŋ** 21  
 rush hour **rʌʃ'aʊə** 35  
 sad **sæd** 7  
 sadness **'sædnəs** 59  
 sailing **'seɪlɪŋ** 21  
 salad **'sæləd** 20  
 salmon fillet **'sæmən 'fɪlɪt**  
 20  
 salt **sɔ:lt** 10  
 sandy **'sændi** 59  
 Saturday **'sætədeɪ** 50  
 saucepan **'sɔ:spən** 11  
 say **seɪ** 46  
 scarf **skɑ:f** 4  
 school **sku:l** 15  
 science fiction **saɪəns 'fɪkʃən**  
 22  
 Scottish **'skɒtɪʃ** 25  
 screen **skri:n** 16  
 season **'si:zən** 50  
 seat **sɪt** 30  
 second **'sekənd** 18, 50  
 secondary school **'sekəndri**  
**sku:l** 31  
 secretary **'sekrətəri** 14  
 see **si:** 22, 23  
 see you soon **si: ju: su:n** 8  
 selfish **'selfɪʃ** 56  
 sell **sel** 32  
 sell drugs **sel drʌɡz** 32  
 send **send** 17  
 send a text (message) **send ə**  
**tekst** 16  
 sentence **'sentəns** 48  
 separated **'sepəreɪtɪd** 2  
 September **sep'tembə** 50  
 shampoo **ʃæm'pu:** 12  
 sheep **ʃi:p** 29  
 shelf **ʃelf** 11, 12  
 ship **ʃɪp** 30  
 shirt **ʃɜ:t** 4  
 shoe(s) **ʃu:** 4, 54  
 shop **ʃɒp** 14, 18, 27  
 shop assistant **ʃɒp ə'sɪstənt**  
 14  
 shoplifter **ʃɒplɪftə** 32  
 shoplifting **'ʃɒplɪftɪŋ** 32  
 shopping **'ʃɒpɪŋ** 18  
 shopping centre **'ʃɒpɪŋ**  
**'sentə** 27  
 short **ʃɔ:t** 5  
 shorts **ʃɔ:ts** 4  
 shoulder **'ʃəʊldə** 3  
 shower **ʃaʊə** 12, 19, 36  
 shower gel **ʃaʊə gel** 12  
 sick **sɪk** 6  
 side **sɑɪd** 3, 27, 52  
 sign **sɑɪn** 18, 19  
 single **'sɪŋɡəl** 2  
 single room **'sɪŋɡəl ru:m**  
 19  
 single ticket **'sɪŋɡəl 'tɪkɪt**  
 30  
 singular **'sɪŋɡjələ** 48  
 sink **sɪŋk** 11  
 sister **'sɪstə** 1  
 size **saɪz** 18  
 ski **ski:** 28  
 skin **skɪn** 3, 5  
 skirt **skɜ:t** 4  
 sleep **slɪ:p** 23  
 sleep well **slɪ:p wel** 8  
 slim **slɪm** 5  
 slow **sləʊ** 53  
 slowly **'sləʊli** 53  
 snack **snæk** 20  
 snake **sneɪk** 29  
 sneeze **sni:z** 6  
 snow **snəʊ** 26  
 snowboarding **'snəʊbɔ:dɪŋ**  
 21  
 snowstorm **'snəʊstɔ:m** 35  
 snowy **'snəʊi** 26  
 so **səʊ** 49  
 soap **səʊp** 12  
 soap opera **'səʊp,ɒpərə** 33  
 socket **'sɒkɪt** 13  
 socks **sɒks** 4  
 sofa **'səʊfə** 13  
 sometimes **'sʌmtaɪmz** 51  
 son **sʌn** 1  
 song **sɒŋ** 24  
 soon **su:n** 51  
 sorry **'sɒri** 8  
 soup (of the day) **su:p** 20  
 South Africa **sauθ 'æfrɪkə**  
 25  
 South African **sauθ**  
**'æfrɪkən** 25  
 South America **sauθ**  
**ə'merɪkə** 25  
 spaghetti **spə'geti** 54  
 Spain **speɪn** 25  
 Spanish **'spænɪʃ** 25  
 speak **spi:k** 46  
 speak to **spi:k tə** 16  
 spoon **spu:n** 11  
 sports **spɔ:ts** 21, 33  
 sports centre **spɔ:ts 'sentə**  
 21  
 spring **sprɪŋ** 50  
 stamp **stæmp** 16  
 starter **'stɑ:tə** 20  
 state school **steɪt sku:l** 31  
 station **'steɪʃən** 27  
 stay **steɪ** 23  
 steak **steɪk** 20  
 steal **sti:l** 32  
 stomach **'stʌmək** 3  
 storm **stɔ:m** 26  
 strawberry (-ies) **'strɔ:bəri**  
 10  
 stress **stres** 6  
 strike **straɪk** 35  
 student **'stju:dənt** 15  
 study **'stʌdi** 15  
 stupid **'stju:pɪd** 56  
 subject **'sʌbdʒɪkt** 15  
 sugar **'ʃʊɡə** 10, 54  
 suit **su:t** 4  
 suitcase **'su:tkeɪs** 17  
 summer **'sʌmə** 50  
 sun **sʌn** 26  
 Sunday **'sʌndeɪ** 50  
 sunglasses **'sʌn,ɡlɑ:sɪz** 4  
 sunny **'sʌni** 26, 59  
 supermarket **'su:pə,mɑ:kɪt**  
 18  
 surprised **sə'praɪzɪd** 7  
 sweater **'swetə** 4  
 swim **swɪm** 36, 47  
 swimmer **'swɪmə** 59  
 swimming **'swɪmɪŋ** 21  
 swimming pool **'swɪmɪŋ**  
**pu:l** 21  
 switch on **swɪtʃ ɒn** 13  
 table **'teɪbəl** 13  
 table tennis **'teɪbəl**  
**'tenɪs** 21  
 take **teɪk** 32, 42, 47  
 take (some) lessons **teɪk**  
**'lesənz** 41



take ... for a walk	teik fɔ:r	take ... off	teik ɒf	4	tennis	'tenɪs	21	toys	tɔɪz	18		
	ə wɔ:k	29			terrible	'terəbəl	55	traffic	'træfɪk	54		
take a course	teik ə kɔ:s	41	take a message	teik ə	terrorism	'terərɪzəm	32	traffic jam	'træfɪk dʒæm	35		
				'mesɪdʒ	16	terrorist	'terərɪst	32	traffic warden	'træfɪk		
take a photo	teik ə 'fəʊtəʊ	41	take an exam	teik ən	text	tekst	16		'wɔ:dən	14		
				ɪg'zæm	15, 41	textbook	'teksbʊk	15	train	treɪn	14, 17, 27, 30	
take drugs	teik drʌgz	32	take a taxi	teik ə 'tæksɪ	41	Thai	taɪ	25	trainers	'treɪnəz	4	
take off	teik ɒf	30, 44	take an exam	teik ən		Thailand	'taɪlənd	25	train station	treɪn 'steɪʃən	27	
take the bus	teik ðə bʌs	41		ɪg'zæm	15, 41	than	ðæn	49	transport	'trænspɔ:t	47	
			take the train	teik ðə treɪn	41	thank for	θæŋk fɔ:	57	travel	'trævəl	54	
						thank you	θæŋk ju:	8, 46	traveller's cheques	'trævələz	tʃeks	17
take the underground	teik		take the underground	teik		thanks	θæŋks	8	travelling	'trævəlɪŋ	30	
	ðə 'ʌndəgraʊnd	41		ðə 'ʌndəgraʊnd	41	then	ðen	51	tropical	'trɒpɪkəl	6	
take-away	teik ə 'weɪ	20	take-away	teik ə 'weɪ	20	there	ðeə	52	trousers	'traʊzəz	4	
talk	tɔ:k	23, 46	talk show	tɔ:k ʃəʊ	33	thin	θɪn	5	trumpet	'trʌmpɪt	24	
talk show	tɔ:k ʃəʊ	33	tall	tɔ:l	5	think about	θɪŋk ə 'baʊt	57	trumpet-player	'trʌmpɪt	'pleɪə	24
tall	tɔ:l	5	tap	tæp	11	third	θɜ:d	18	try on	traɪ ɒn	18	
tap	tæp	11	tape recorder	teɪp rɪ'kɔ:də	15	thirsty	'θɜ:sti	7	T-shirt	'ti:ʃɜ:t	4	
tape recorder	teɪp rɪ'kɔ:də	15	taxi	'tæksɪ	30, 41	thriller	'θrɪlə	22	Tuesday	'tju:zdeɪ	50	
taxi	'tæksɪ	30, 41	taxi driver	'tæksɪ 'draɪvə	14	thumb	θʌm	3	Tunisia	tju:'nɪziə	25	
taxi driver	'tæksɪ 'draɪvə	14	tea	ti:	10, 36, 54	thunder	'θʌndə	26, 26	Tunisian	tju:'nɪziən	25	
tea	ti:	10, 36, 54	tea towel	ti: təʊəl	11	thunderstorm	'θʌndəstɔ:m	26	turn	tɜ:n	27	
tea towel	ti: təʊəl	11	teach	ti:tʃ	15	thundery	'θʌndəri	26	turn down	tɜ:n daʊn	44	
teach	ti:tʃ	15	teacher	'ti:tʃə	14, 15	Thursday	'θɜ:zdeɪ	50	turn off	tɜ:n ɒf	12, 13, 44	
teacher	'ti:tʃə	14, 15	teapot	'ti:pɒt	11	ticket	'tɪkɪt	30	turn on	tɜ:n ɒn	13, 44	
teapot	'ti:pɒt	11	teenage	'ti:neɪdʒ	33	tidy	'taɪdi	34	turn up	tɜ:n ʌp	44	
teenage	'ti:neɪdʒ	33	teeth	ti:θ	3	tie	taɪ	4	TV	'ti:'vi:	13, 19, 22, 23, 33	
teeth	ti:θ	3	telephone (phone)	'telɪfəʊn	12, 16	tiger	'taɪgə	29	twice	twɑ:s	51	
telephone (phone)	'telɪfəʊn	12, 16	television (TV)	'telɪvɪʒən	12, 13	tights	taɪts	4	ugly	'ʌgli	5	
television (TV)	'telɪvɪʒən	12, 13	tell (someone) a joke	tel ə	dʒəʊk	46	timetable	'taɪm,teɪbəl	30	UK	ˌju:'keɪ	25
tell (someone) a joke	tel ə	dʒəʊk	46			timetable	'taɪm,teɪbəl	30	umbrella	ʌm'brelə	4	
tell (someone) a story	tel ə	'stɔ:ri	46			(four) times a month	taimz	ə mʌnθ	51	uncle	'ʌŋkəl	1
tell (someone) the time	tel	ðə taɪm	46			(three) times a week	taimz ə	wi:k	45	uncountable	ʌn'kaʊntəbəl	54
tell someone your address	tel	'sʌmwʌn	ɔ:ɪ ə'dres	46		tired	taɪəd	7	underground	'ʌndəgraʊnd	30	
tell someone your name	tel	'sʌmwʌn	ɔ:ɪ neɪm	46		today	tə'deɪ	50, 51	unemployed	ˌʌnɪm'plɔɪd	35	
tell someone your phone number	tel	'sʌmwʌn	ɔ:ɪ fəʊn	'nʌmbə	46	too	tu:	49	unfriendly	ʌn'frendli	53	
						too much	tu: mʌtʃ	34	unhappy	ʌn'hæpi	56, 58	
						tooth	tu:θ	3	United States (the US)	ˌju:n'aɪtɪd'steɪts	25	
						toothache	'tu:θeɪk	6	university	ˌju:nɪ'vɜ:səti	15	
						toothbrush	'tu:θbrʌʃ	12	unsafe	ʌn'seɪf	58	
						toothpaste	'tu:θpeɪst	12	untidy	ʌn'taɪdi	34	
						top	tɒp	52	upset	ʌp'set	7	
						tortoise	'tɔ:təs	29	upstairs	ʌp'steəz	12	
						tourist (information) office	'tuərɪst	'ɒfɪs	27	USA	ˌju:es'eɪ	25
						towel	təʊəl	12	useful	'ju:sfəl	59	
						town	taʊn	27, 28	useless	'ju:sləs	59	
						town hall	taʊn hɔ:l	27				

usually 'ju:ʒəli 45, 51  
 Valentine's Day 'væləntaɪnz  
 deɪ 31  
 vandal 'vændəl 32  
 vandalism 'vændəlɪzəm 32  
 vegetable(s) 'vedʒtəbəl 10,  
 20  
 vegetarian ,vedʒɪ'teəriən  
 10  
 verb vɜ:b 48  
 very 'veri 55  
 village 'vɪlɪdʒ 28  
 violin ,vaɪə'lɪn 24  
 violinist vaɪə'lɪnɪst 24  
 visa 'vi:zə 17  
 voicemail 'vɔ:smel 16  
 volleyball 'vɒlibɔ:l 21  
 waist weɪst 3  
 wait for weɪt fɔ: 57, 60  
 waiter 'weɪtə 14  
 wake up weɪk ʌp 12, 45  
 wake-up call weɪk ʌp kɔ:l  
 19  
 walk wɔ:k 28, 47  
 walking holiday 'wɔ:kɪŋ  
 'hɒlədeɪ 17  
 want wɒnt 7  
 war wɔ: 35  
 wardrobe 'wɔ:drəʊb 12  
 wash wɒʃ 3  
 wash clothes wɒʃ kləʊðz  
 45  
 washing machine 'wɒʃɪŋ  
 mə'ʃi:n 11  
 washing-up liquid 'wɒʃɪŋ ʌp  
 'lɪkwɪd 11  
 watch wɒtʃ 4, 13, 22, 23,  
 33, 45  
 water 'wɔ:tə 29, 34, 54  
 way weɪ 53  
 wear weə 4  
 weather 'weðə 26, 54  
 wedding 'wedɪŋ 2  
 Wednesday 'wenzdeɪ 50  
 week wɪ:k 50  
 weekend ,wɪ:k'end 50  
 weigh wei 2, 5  
 weight weɪt 5  
 well wel 6, 7, 53  
 well done wel dʌn 8, 9  
 well-behaved ,welbɪ'heɪvd  
 56  
 well-done ,wel'dʌn 20  
 western 'westən 22

wet wet 26  
 what a pity wɒt ə'pɪti 9  
 What about ...? wɒt ə'baʊt  
 9  
 What time do you ....? wɒt  
 taɪm də ju: 45  
 What's his/her job? wɒts  
 hɪz/hɜ: dʒɒb 14  
 What's on ...? wɒts ɒn 22  
 What's on TV? wɒts ɒn  
 ,tɪ'vi: 33  
 What's the weather like?  
 wɒts ðə 'weðə laɪk 26  
 What's your favourite  
 ...? wɒts jɔ: 'feɪvərɪt 21  
 when wen 49  
 Where can I find ...? weə  
 kən aɪ faɪnd 11  
 Where does ... go? weə dɔz  
 gəʊ 11  
 Where is ...? weə ɪz 27  
 Why don't ...? waɪ dəʊnt  
 9  
 widowed 'wɪdəʊd 2  
 wife waɪf 1  
 wild animal waɪld 'ænɪməl  
 29  
 wildlife 'waɪldaɪf 28  
 wind wɪnd 26  
 window 'wɪndəʊ 13  
 windy 'wɪndi 26  
 wine waɪn 10  
 wine list waɪn lɪst 20  
 winter 'wɪntə 50  
 winter holiday 'wɪntə  
 'hɒlədeɪ 17  
 women's wear wɪmɪnz  
 weə 18  
 wonderful 'wʌndəfəl 55,  
 56  
 wood wʊd 28  
 wool wʊl 29  
 work wɜ:k 14, 34, 54  
 worker 'wɜ:kə 59  
 worktop 'wɜ:ktɒp 11  
 Would you like ...? wʊd ju:  
 laɪk 20  
 write raɪt 15  
 write emails raɪt i:meɪlz  
 45  
 write letters raɪt 'letəz 45  
 wrong rɒŋ 53  
 year jɪə 50, 51  
 yesterday 'jestədeɪ 50

Yorkshire pudding 'jɔ:kʃə  
 'pu:dɪŋ 31  
 young jʌŋ 5  
 zoo zu: 29

# Irregular verbs

Most verbs in English are regular but some of the most common verbs in English are irregular. The forms here are the infinitive (*go, come*), the past simple (*went, came*) and the past participle (*gone, come*).

## A All forms the same

cost	cost	cost
cut /kʌt/	cut	cut
hurt	hurt	hurt
let	let	let
put /pʊt/	put	put
shut /ʃʌt/	shut	shut

## B Two different forms

beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
bring	brought	brought
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
come	came	come
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
get	got	got
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
keep	kept	kept
leave	left	left
learn	learnt	learnt
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
meet	met	met
pay	paid /peɪd/	paid
read /ri:d/	read /red/	read /red/
run	ran	run
say	said /sed/	said
sell	sold	sold
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
win	won	won
understand	understood	understood

### C Three different forms

be	was / were	been
begin	began	begun
break	broke	broken
choose	chose	chosen
do	did	done
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
know	knew	known
ride	rode	ridden
rise	rose	risen
sing	sang	sung
speak	spoke	spoken
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
throw	threw	thrown
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
write	wrote	written

#### Tip

When you learn a new irregular verb, add it to one of the groups of verbs on these pages.

# How to learn vocabulary

To learn a lot of vocabulary, you have to do different things.

- 1 Study each unit of the book carefully and do all the exercises. Check your answers with your teacher. Repeat the units after a month, and then again after three months, and see how much you have learnt and how much you have forgotten. Repeating work is very important.
- 2 Keep a vocabulary notebook. Students who regularly make notes in a separate notebook often do better in tests and examinations than students who do not keep a notebook.
- 3 Use different ways of recording things in your notebook. For example, every time you see or hear an interesting phrase, write it in your notebook, and write who said it or wrote it, and in what situation, as well as what it means. Here are some examples:

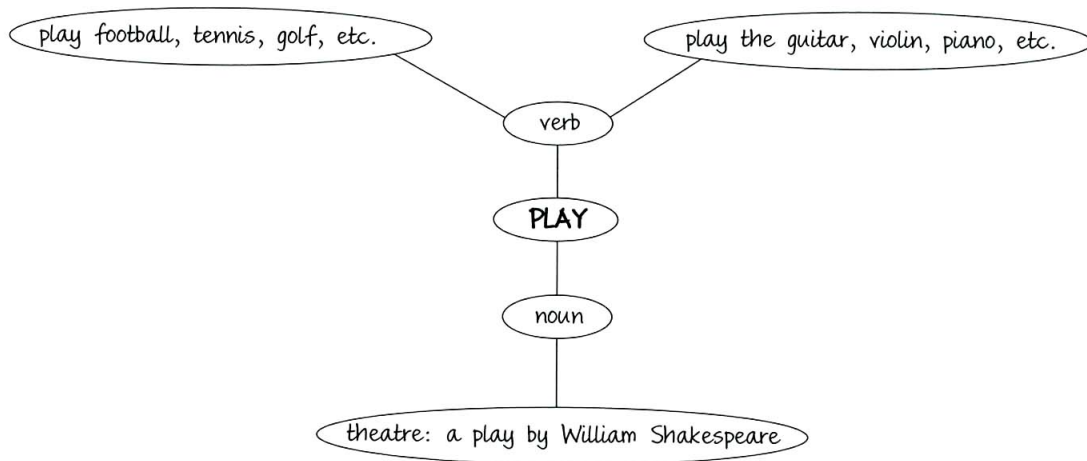
**ready:** (person at the door of a theatre, to all the people waiting) 'Have your tickets ready, please!' = have your ticket in your hand

**else:** (person in a restaurant) 'Would you like anything else?' = more or in addition or different

**rush hour:** (person who is about to leave home for work) 'I'm going early so that I miss the rush hour' = the times when there are lots of people travelling to work in the morning or when people are travelling home in the evening

Making notes of the situations words are used in will help you to remember them and to use them at the right moment.

- 4 Use diagrams and other visual aids to help you learn and remember words and phrases. Word bubbles are very easy to draw and can help you remember the different meanings and uses of words. Here is an example for the word *play*, which can be a verb or a noun:



Charts can also help you to organise information about words. This student has made notes in her vocabulary notebook about useful verbs and the nouns we use them with:

take	a taxi a message violin lessons	catch	a cold a criminal a ball	make	dinner a mistake an appointment	do	my homework somebody a favour my best (to)
------	---------------------------------------	-------	--------------------------------	------	---------------------------------------	----	--

# How to use the *English Vocabulary in Use Elementary* CD-ROM to learn vocabulary

Your copy of *English Vocabulary in Use Elementary* comes with a CD-ROM. You can use the CD-ROM to improve your English vocabulary. These two pages answer some common questions about the CD-ROM.

## What is on the CD-ROM?

The CD-ROM contains:

- two practice activities for each unit of the book (120 in total)
- two vocabulary games, *Word Challenger* and *Falling Letters*
- a test maker
- a record and play-back function
- a dictionary function.

## When should I use the CD-ROM?

You can use the CD-ROM before or after you do a unit in the book. This section will give you some suggestions.

### Using the CD-ROM before you look at a unit in the book

The CD-ROM can help you discover how much vocabulary you already know about a topic. Try this:

- Choose a topic from the *Exercises* menu, for example *Food and drink* in the *At home* section.
- Complete the two exercises. After each exercise, click *Check your answers* to see how many questions you got right. Make a note of any words you found difficult.
- Now go to the relevant unit of the book. Study the notes on the left-hand page. Try to find the words you didn't know from the CD-ROM. Complete the exercises on the right-hand page.
- Finally, return to the CD-ROM. Look at the *My progress* section. Can you improve your score this time? Complete the two exercises again for the same unit.

### Using the CD-ROM after you look at a unit in the book

The CD-ROM can help you to remember words you learnt from the book. This kind of revision is very important if you want to remember vocabulary. Try this:

- When you complete a unit from the book, write the date at the top of the page.
- One week later, go to the CD-ROM and do the two exercises from that unit. How much vocabulary can you remember? Make a note of any words you found difficult or couldn't remember.
- Go back to the unit in the book and look for the words you didn't know. Study the words again.
- Finally, return to the CD-ROM and complete the two exercises again. Did you remember those difficult words?

The CD-ROM can also help you test yourself. You can even personalise the tests to cover the topics that *you* want to practise. Try this:

- When you finish a group of units in the book (for example, the nine units in the *People* section), go to the CD-ROM and make a test on the vocabulary from those units. The CD-ROM will create five test questions from each of those units. For an extra challenge, use the time limit function. If your score is low, look at the units again. Then create a new test and try to improve your score.
- Alternatively, create a test when you have completed the whole book. Choose units at random or concentrate on units that you found difficult.

### Can the CD-ROM help me with my pronunciation?

Yes, it can. The CD-ROM has a record and play-back function which you can use to practise your pronunciation. Try this:

- When you have completed an exercise on the CD-ROM, click the green arrow to hear a model pronunciation of the words or sentences.
- Then click the red *Record your voice* button at the bottom of the screen. Practise saying the word or sentence.
- Now click the green *Play your voice* arrow at the bottom of the screen. Does your pronunciation sound correct? Listen to the model pronunciation again to check.
- Record your voice again if necessary.

### Can I use the CD-ROM for fun?

Yes, of course! We hope you will find all of the exercises fun. However, there are also two games which can help you to practise vocabulary in a fun way.

- In *Word Challenger*, you score points by choosing the correct word for the picture. This game can help you to remember what words mean. You can make the game easier or harder by using the different options. If you write down your score after each game, you can try to improve it next time.
- In *Falling Letters*, you can practise listening and spelling. Try to score as many points as you can in the time available. Write down your score and try to improve it next time.

Both these games are quick and fun. Just playing for five or ten minutes a day can help you to remember more vocabulary. And to make things even more fun, you can have a competition with a friend. Who can score the most points?

### What else can the CD-ROM do?

Remember that the CD-ROM also has a dictionary function. You can use it to look up any words that you don't know. You will need an internet connection for this.

Also remember that you can check your progress at any time using the *Progress* section. This will help you to see which exercises you have completed. It can also show you areas where you need more practice. In those cases, go back to the book and study the left-hand pages again.

We hope you enjoy using the *English Vocabulary in Use Elementary* CD-ROM.

# English Vocabulary in Use

Elementary *with answers* Second edition

Do you want to improve your vocabulary quickly? Do you want the confidence to use the right words when you need them? Whether you're studying on your own or in class, *English Vocabulary in Use Elementary* covers all the words and phrases you need at this level to understand and be understood in English. This new edition is fully updated to make the book even more relevant and accessible.

- Two-page units with clear explanations on the left page and practice exercises on the right.
- Presents and explains new words in context and shows you how to use them.
- NEW! Error warnings and vocabulary tips help you avoid common mistakes and learn new vocabulary more effectively.
- Based on a corpus of real written and spoken language to ensure the vocabulary is completely up-to-date.

The new CD-ROM gives you over a hundred practice exercises, providing further practice for every unit.

- NEW! Interactive games make learning fun.
- Make your own tests! Choose from 600 questions to test the vocabulary that you want to practise.
- Audio recordings provide extra listening practice – listen, repeat and record your voice to practise your pronunciation.
- The built-in dictionary gives you instant definitions of new vocabulary – add your own notes to personalise your learning.

System Requirements  
For Windows® XP, Vista, Windows® 7  
and Mac OSX 10.4 or higher

#### CAMBRIDGE INTERNATIONAL CORPUS

The Cambridge International Corpus (CIC) is a collection of over 1.5 billion words of real spoken and written English. The texts are stored in a database that can be searched to see how English is used. The CIC also includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, a unique collection of over 35 million words taken from student exam papers from Cambridge ESOL. It shows real mistakes students make and highlights the parts of English which cause problems for students.

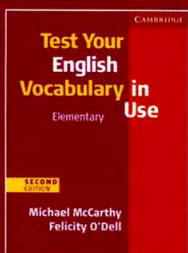
[www.cambridge.org/corpus](http://www.cambridge.org/corpus)

REAL ENGLISH GUARANTEE

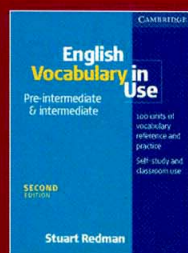


Also available: **Test your English Vocabulary in Use Elementary**  
**English Vocabulary in Use Pre-Intermediate & Intermediate**  
**Cambridge Essential English Dictionary**

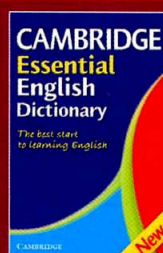
**in  
Use**



ISBN 978 0 521 13621 1



ISBN 978 0 521 01171 6



ISBN 978 0 521 00537 1



**CAMBRIDGE**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS  
[www.cambridge.org](http://www.cambridge.org)

ISBN 978-0-521-13620-4



9 780521 136204 >